

D R A F T

FOR DISCUSSION ONLY

Uniform Commercial Code and Emerging Technologies

Uniform Law Commission

~~January 28–29~~ March 7–8, 2022 Committee Meeting



Copyright © 2022
National Conference of Commissioners on Uniform State Laws

This draft, including the proposed statutory language and any comments or reporter's notes, has not been reviewed or approved by the Uniform Law Commission or the drafting committee. It does not necessarily reflect the views of the Uniform Law Commission, its commissioners, the drafting committee, or the committee's members or reporter.

~~January 17~~ February 28, 2022

Uniform Commercial Code and Emerging Technologies

The committee appointed by and representing the National Conference of Commissioners on Uniform State Laws in preparing this act consists of the following individuals:

Edwin E. Smith	Massachusetts, <i>Chair</i>
Juliet M. Moringiello	Pennsylvania, <i>Vice Chair</i>
Carl S. Bjerre	Oregon
Thomas J. Buiteweg	Michigan
Henry Deeb Gabriel	North Carolina
Larry T. Garvin	Ohio
Thomas S. Hemmendinger	Rhode Island
William H. Henning	Alabama
Philip A. Nicholas	Wyoming
Harvey S. Perlman	Nebraska
Sandra S. Stern	New York
Frank Sullivan Jr.	Indiana
Martin D. Carr	California, <i>Division Chair</i>
Dan Robbins	California, <i>President</i>

American Law Institute Members

Amelia H. Boss	Pennsylvania
Sylvia F. Chin	New York (2021–)
Neil B. Cohen	New York
Marek Dubovec	Arizona
Walter Effross	District of Columbia
Teresa Wilton Harmon	Illinois
Tarik J. Haskins	Delaware
Stephanie A. Heller	New York
Charles W. Mooney, Jr.	Pennsylvania (2019–2021)
Norman M. Powell	Delaware
Sandra M. Rocks	New York
Steven O. Weise	California

Other Participants

Charles W. Mooney, Jr.	Pennsylvania, <i>Reporter</i> (2021–)
Stephen L. Sepinuck	Washington, <i>Associate Reporter</i>
Steven L. Harris	Illinois, <i>Reporter</i> (2019–2021)
Stephen Y. Chow	Massachusetts, <i>American Bar Association Advisor</i>
Candace M. Zierdt	North Dakota, <i>American Bar Association Advisor</i>
Guido Carducci	France, <i>American Bar Association Section Advisor</i>
Stephen J. Curley	Connecticut, <i>American Bar Association Section Advisor</i>
Mark J. Cutrona	Delaware, <i>Style Liaison</i>
Tim Schnabel	Illinois, <i>Executive Director</i>

Copies of this act may be obtained from:

Uniform Law Commission
111 N. Wabash Ave., Suite 1010
Chicago, IL 60602
(312) 450-6600
www.uniformlaws.org

UNIFORM COMMERCIAL CODE AND EMERGING TECHNOLOGIES

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Reporter’s Prefatory Note to January 17 <u>February 28</u> , 2022 Draft	11
--	----

ARTICLE 1

GENERAL PROVISIONS

Section 1-107. Section Captions.....	66
Section 1-201. General Definitions.	66
<u>Section 1-103. Construction of [Uniform Commercial Code] to Promote its Purposes and Policies; Applicability of Supplemental Principles of Law</u>	<u>14</u>
Section 1-204. Value.	1616

ARTICLE 2

SALES

Section 2-102. Scope; Certain Security and Other Transactions Excluded From This Article.....	16
<u>Section 2-106. Definitions: “Contract”; “Agreement”; “Contract for Sale”; “Sale”; “Present Sale”; “Conforming” to Contract; “Termination”; “Cancellation”; “Hybrid Transaction”</u>	<u>22</u>
<u>Section 2-201. Formal Requirements; Statute of Frauds.....</u>	<u>24</u>
<u>Section 2-202. Final Written Expression: Parol or Extrinsic Evidence.</u>	<u>27</u>
<u>Section 2-207. Additional Terms in Acceptance or Confirmation.....</u>	<u>29</u>
<u>Section 2-209. Modification, Rescission and Waiver.</u>	<u>30</u>
<u>Section 2-316. Exclusion or Modification of Warranties.....</u>	<u>32</u>
<u>Section 2-605. Waiver of Buyer’s Objections by Failure to Particularize.....</u>	<u>32</u>
<u>Section 2-607. Effect of Acceptance; Notice of Breach; Burden of Establishing Breach After Acceptance; Notice of Claim or Litigation to Person Answerable Over.</u>	<u>32</u>
<u>Section 2-609. Right to Adequate Assurance of Performance.....</u>	<u>33</u>
<u>Section 2-616. Procedure on Notice Claiming Excuse.....</u>	<u>33</u>
<u>Section 2-702. Seller’s Remedies on Discovery of Buyer’s Insolvency.....</u>	<u>33</u>

ARTICLE 2A

LEASES

Section 2A-102. Scope.	34
<u>Section 2A-103. Definitions and Index of Definitions.....</u>	<u>35</u>
<u>Section 2A-107. Waiver or Renunciation of Claim or Right After Default.....</u>	<u>37</u>
<u>Section 2A-201. Statute of Frauds.....</u>	<u>38</u>
<u>Section 2A-202. Final Written Expression: Parol or Extrinsic Evidence.....</u>	<u>39</u>
<u>Section 2A-203. Seals Inoperative.</u>	<u>40</u>
<u>Section 2A-205. Firm Offers.....</u>	<u>40</u>
<u>Section 2A-208. Modification, Rescission and Waiver.</u>	<u>41</u>

<u>Section 2A-214. Exclusion or Modification of Warranties.....</u>	41
<u>Section 2A-303. Alienability of Party's Interest Under Lease Contract or of Lessor's Residual Interest in Goods; Delegation of Performance; Transfer of Rights.....</u>	41
<u>Section 2A-309. Lessor's and Lessee's Rights When Goods Become Fixtures.</u>	42
<u>Section 2A-310. Lessor's and Lessee's Rights When Goods Become Accessions.</u>	42
<u>Section 2A-401. Insecurity: Adequate Assurance of Performance.</u>	42
<u>Section 2A-406. Procedure on Excused Performance.....</u>	42
<u>Section 2A-514. Waiver of Lessee's Objections.....</u>	43
<u>Section 2A-516. Effect of Acceptance of Goods; Notice of Default; Burden of Establishing Default After Acceptance; Notice of Claim or Litigation to Person Answerable Over.</u>	43
Reporter's Prefatory Note to Payments Amendments.....	4343

ARTICLE 3

NEGOTIABLE INSTRUMENTS

Section 3-104. Negotiable Instrument.	44
Section 3-105. Issue of Instrument.	45
Section 3-309. Enforcement of Lost, Destroyed, or Stolen Instrument.....	46
Section 3-604. Discharge by Cancellation or Renunciation.....	4747

ARTICLE 4

BANK DEPOSITS AND COLLECTIONS

Section 4-207. Transfer Warranties.....	4848
---	------

ARTICLE 4A

FUNDS TRANSFERS

Section 4A-103. Payment Order – Definitions.....	49
Section 4A-104. Funds Transfer – Definitions.....	49
Section 4A-201. Security Procedure.	51
Section 4A-202. Authorized and Verified Payment Orders.	52
Section 4A-203. Unenforceability of Certain Verified Payment Orders.....	5353
Section 4A-206. Transmission of Payment Order Through Funds-Transfer or Other Communication System.....	58
Section 4A-207. Misdescription of Beneficiary.....	58
Section 4A-208. Misdescription of Intermediary Bank or Beneficiary's Bank.	59
Section 4A—210. Rejection of Payment Order.	60
Section 4A-211. Cancellation and Amendment of Payment Order.....	60

ARTICLE 5

LETTERS OF CREDIT

<u>Section 5-102. Definitions.....</u>	61
Section 5-116. Choice of Law and Forum.....	6262

ARTICLE 7

DOCUMENTS OF TITLE

<u>Section 7-102. Definitions and Index of Definitions.....</u>	64
Section 7-106. Control of Electronic Document of Title.	6465
<u>Section 7-403. Obligation of Bailee to Deliver; Excuse.</u>	69
<u>Section 7-504. Rights Acquired in Absence of Due Negotiation; Effect of Diversion; Stoppage of Delivery.</u>	70

ARTICLE 8

INVESTMENT SECURITIES

Reporter's Prefatory Note to Article 8 Amendments	71
Section 8-102. Definitions and Index of Definitions.....	72
Section 8-106. Control.....	7575
<u>Section 8-303. Protected Purchaser.</u>	77
Section 8-501. Securities Account; Acquisition of Security Entitlement from Securities Intermediary.....	77

ARTICLE 9

SECURED TRANSACTIONS

Reporter's Prefatory Note to Article 9 Amendments	79
Section 9-102. Definitions and Index of Definitions.....	81
Section 9-104. Control of Deposit Account.	92
Section 9-105. Control of Electronic Chattel Paper.	94
Section 9-105. Control of Electronic Copy of Record Evidencing Chattel Paper.	94
<u>Section 9-105A. Control of Electronic Money.....</u>	9999
<u>Section 9-107A. Control of Controllable Electronic Record, Controllable Account, or Controllable Payment Intangible.</u>	100
<u>Section 9-107B. No Requirement to Acknowledge or Confirm; No Duties.</u>	101
Section 9-203. Attachment and Enforceability of Security Interest; Proceeds; Supporting Obligations; Formal Requisites.	102
Section 9-204. After-Acquired Property; Future Advances.	103103
Section 9-207. Rights and Duties of Secured Party Having Possession or Control of Collateral..	105
Section 9-208. Additional Duties of Secured Party Having Control of Collateral.....	105
Section 9-301. Law Governing Perfection and Priority of Security Interests.	108

Section 9-306A.	
<u>Section 9-306A. Law Governing Perfection and Priority of Security Interests in Chattel Paper Evidenced by Authoritative Electronic Copy and Not by Authoritative Tangible Copy...</u>	110
<u>Section 9-306B. Law Governing Perfection and Priority of Security Interests in Controllable Accounts, Controllable Electronic Records, and Controllable Payment Intangibles.</u>	113
Section 9-307. Location of Debtor.	114
Section 9-310. When Filing Required to Perfect Security Interest or Agricultural Lien; Security Interests and Agricultural Liens to Which Filing Provisions Do Not Apply.	115
Section 9-312. Perfection of Security Interests in Chattel Paper, <u>Controllable Accounts</u> , <u>Controllable Electronic Records</u> , <u>Controllable Payment Intangibles</u> , Deposit Accounts, Negotiable Documents, Goods Covered by Documents, Instruments, Investment Property, Letter-of-Credit Rights, and Money; Perfection by Permissive Filing; Temporary Perfection Without Filing or Transfer of Possession.	115
Section 9-313. When Possession by or Delivery to Secured Party Perfects Security Interest Without Filing	119
Section 9-314. Perfection by Control.	119
Section 9-314A. Perfection by Possession and Control of Chattel Paper.	120120
Section 9-316. Continued Perfection of Security Interest Following Change in Governing Law.	121
Section 9-317. Interests That Take Priority Over or Take Free of Security Interest or Agricultural Lien.	123
<u>Section 9-326A. Priority of Security Interests in Controllable Account, Controllable Electronic Record, and Controllable Payment Intangible.</u>	125
Section 9-330. Priority of Purchaser of Chattel Paper or Instrument.	125125
Section 9-331. Priority of Rights of Purchasers of <u>Controllable Accounts</u> , <u>Controllable Electronic Records</u> , <u>Controllable Payment Intangibles</u> , Instruments , Documents, <u>Instruments</u> , and Securities Under Other Articles; Priority of Interests in Financial Assets and Security Entitlements <u>and Protections Against Assertions of Claims Under Article 8</u> Articles 8 and 12 .	126
Section 9-332. Transfer of Money; Transfer of Funds from Deposit Account.	128128
Section 9-406. Discharge of Account Debtor; Notification of Assignment; Identification and Proof of Assignment; Restrictions on Assignment of Accounts, Chattel Paper, Payment Intangibles, and Promissory Notes Ineffective.	130
Section 9-601. Rights After Default; Judicial Enforcement; Consignor or Buyer of Accounts, Chattel Paper, Payment Intangibles, or Promissory Notes.	132
Section 9-605. Unknown Debtor or Secondary Obligor.	132132
<u>Section 9-610. Disposition of Collateral After Default.</u>	136
<u>Section 9-611. Notification Before Disposition of Collateral.</u>	137
<u>Section 9-614. Contents and Form of Notification Before Disposition of Collateral: Consumer-Goods Transaction.</u>	138
<u>Section 9-616. Explanation of Calculation of Surplus or Deficiency.</u>	140
<u>Section 9-627. Determination of Whether Conduct Was Commercially Reasonable.</u>	142
Section 9-628. Nonliability and Limitation on Liability of Secured Party; Liability of Secondary Obligor.	142

ARTICLE 12

CONTROLLABLE ELECTRONIC RECORDS

Reporter’s Prefatory Note to Article 12	144
Section 12-101. Title.	150
Section 12-102. Definitions.	150
Section 12-103. Scope <u>Relationship to Article 9 and Consumer Laws</u>	152152
Section 12-104. Rights in Controllable Account, Controllable Electronic Record, and Controllable Payment Intangible.	152
Section 12-105. Control of Controllable Electronic Record.	157157
Section 12-106. Discharge of Account Debtor on Controllable Account or Controllable Payment Intangible.	163
Section 12-107. Governing Law.....	168168

UNIFORM COMMERCIAL CODE AND EMERGING TECHNOLOGIES

~~JANUARY 17~~ February 28, 2022 DRAFT

Note on formatting:

The draft amendments to provisions of the UCC and official comments in this draft are marked to show changes from the current UCC official text and official comments. A few provisions of the UCC are included for convenience of reference even though no changes are proposed.

Because Article 12 is a completely new UCC article, its provisions are not underscored.

New sections are numbered with an “A” or “B” at the end, e.g., Section 9-107A. It is contemplated that this numbering convention will be retained for these sections that remain in the final Act. This will avoid the need to renumber existing sections.

Reporter’s Prefatory Note to ~~January 17~~ February 28, 2022 Draft (submitted to the ALI Council)

This Prefatory Note first describes the background of the project on Emerging Technologies and the Uniform Commercial Code (UCC) and the work to date. It then provides a brief overview of the proposed revisions to the UCC. Additional Prefatory Notes are provided below for the proposed amendments relating to payments (Articles 3, 4, and 4A), investment securities (Article 8), secured transactions (Article 9), and controllable electronic records (new Article 12).

1. Background

The Uniform Commercial Code has been enacted in all 50 states, the District of Columbia, Puerto Rico, and the U.S. Virgin Islands. Since its widespread enactment in the 1960s, the UCC has been periodically revised to address changes in commercial practices.

In 2019, the Uniform Law Commission and The American Law Institute (the Sponsors) appointed a Joint Committee to consider whether changes to the UCC are advisable to accommodate emerging technologies, such as artificial intelligence, distributed ledger technology, and virtual currency. At the time when the Joint Committee was formed, invitations were sent to large groups of potential stakeholders including trade organizations, financial institutions, technology companies, government agencies, academicians, and consumer groups. The Committee currently has more than 300 observers.

The Joint Committee was initially formed as a study committee. However, the Joint Committee subsequently received the permission of the Sponsors to act as a drafting committee for amendments to the UCC dealing with digital assets, bundled transactions (*i.e.*, transactions involving the sale or lease of goods together with the provision of services, the licensing of information, or both), and payments, as well as for certain discrete amendments to the UCC

unrelated to emerging technologies. For convenience, further references are to the Drafting Committee.

The Drafting Committee has held the following meetings:

- October 4~~and~~5, 2019, in Denver, Colorado.
- January 31~~and~~February 1, 2020, in Washington, D.C.
- Remote meetings by Zoom on May 29~~and~~30, July 23 and 31, September 2, and December 1, 2020, and on February 1, March 9, April 27 and 29, May 3 and 10, July 6, ~~and~~November 5~~and~~6, 2021, and January 28–29, 2022.
- Remote informal open meetings, held on June 15 and 16, 2021, for ULC Commissioners and members of the Drafting Committee preliminary to the ULC Annual Meeting.
- ULC Annual Meeting (remote and in-person), first reading, July 13, 2021.

The Chair and Reporter along with Drafting Committee members Neil B. Cohen and Steven O. Weise presented a draft to the ALI Council meeting on January 20, 2022, which was approved by the Council with the usual caveats. In addition, several small working groups have met remotely (and~~some~~ continue to meet) to discuss specific topics and to hear the views of various stakeholder groups. Since the 2021 ULC Annual Meeting the Chair, Vice Chair, Reporters, and several members of the Drafting Committee have presented educational programs addressing the ongoing revision process to groups including the Loan Syndication and Trading Association, the ABA Business Law Section, ~~and~~the American College of Commercial Finance Lawyers, the Association of Commercial Finance Attorneys, and the New York City Bar Association.

The work of the Drafting Committee is currently in the following areas concerning the UCC: digital assets (controllable electronic records), electronic money, chattel paper, “bundled transactions” (consisting of the sale or lease of goods together with licensing of software and the provision of services as an integrated transaction), documents of title, payment systems, miscellaneous UCC amendments, and consumer issues.

The Drafting Committee expects to hold at least two full meetings in 2022, ~~with~~and a ~~view~~meeting currently is scheduled for March 7–8, 2022. The Committee expects to ~~completing~~complete the draft of the amendments, ~~obtaining and obtain~~ American Law Institute approval of the draft at its May 2022 annual meeting, and final approval of the Commission at its July 2022 annual meeting. Members of the Drafting Committee will continue to reach out to industry groups and other stakeholders and plan to continue participating in CLE presentations to educate members of the bar and others.

2. Overview of UCC Revisions

The Drafting Committee’s charge is broad, and the resulting draft is expansive.

a. New UCC Article 12 – Controllable electronic records, controllable accounts, controllable payment intangibles

1 The draft includes a new UCC Article 12 that would govern the transfer of property
2 rights in certain intangible digital assets (“controllable electronic records”) that have been or may
3 be created using new technologies. These assets include, for example, certain types of virtual
4 currency and nonfungible tokens (NFTs). “Control” of controllable electronic records is a central
5 organizing concept under Article 12. Controllable electronic records are defined to include only
6 those electronic records that can be subjected to control. Control is the functional equivalent of
7 “possession” of a controllable electronic record and a necessary condition for protection as a
8 good faith purchaser for value (a “qualifying purchaser”) of a controllable electronic record.
9 Article 12 confers an attribute of negotiability on controllable electronic records because a
10 qualifying purchaser takes its interest free of conflicting property claims.

11
12 Controllable electronic records also provide a mechanism for evidencing certain rights to
13 payment—controllable accounts and controllable payment intangibles. An account debtor
14 (obligor) on such a right to payment agrees to make payments to the person that has control of
15 the controllable electronic record that evidences the right to payment. Assignments and other
16 aspects of these rights to payment are governed by revisions to UCC Article 9, discussed below.
17 Because a qualifying purchaser of a controllable account or controllable payment intangible will
18 take free of competing property claims, these rights to payment also would have this attribute of
19 negotiability. Article 12 also provides some special rules with respect to the payment obligations
20 and conditions of discharge of account debtors on controllable accounts and controllable
21 payment obligations.

22
23 Article 12 includes a choice-of-law rule for the matters that it covers in connection with
24 transactions in controllable electronic records.

25
26 For a more detailed description of Article 12, see the Reporter’s Prefatory Note to Article
27 12.

28 29 *b. Secured transactions amendments – UCC Article 9*

30
31 *Article 12 conforming amendments.* The draft includes extensive amendments to UCC
32 Article 9. Several of these amendments address security interests in controllable electronic
33 records and in the rights to payment that are embedded in, or tethered to, controllable electronic
34 records—controllable accounts and controllable payment intangibles. Perfection (i.e., essentially
35 third-party effectiveness) of security interests in these assets may be achieved by a secured party
36 obtaining control of the asset or filing a financing statement in the appropriate state’s filing
37 office. A security interest perfected by control has priority over a security interest perfected by
38 filing. The draft also provides special rules for the law governing perfection and priority for
39 security interests in controllable electronic records, controllable accounts, and controllable
40 payment intangibles. These rules draw on the new Article 12 choice-of-law rule.

41
42 *Chattel paper.* UCC Article 9 affords special treatment to “chattel paper” (e.g.,
43 installment sale contracts and personal property leases). The draft redefines “chattel paper” and
44 updates the Article 9 provisions applicable to this type of collateral. The new definition resolves
45 uncertainty that has arisen under the current definition and more accurately reflects the
46 distinction between the seller’s or lessor’s right to payment and the record (e.g., installment sale

1 contract or lease) evidencing that right. The new definition also resolves uncertainty that has
2 arisen when goods are leased as part of a ~~bundled hybrid~~ transaction involving services or non-
3 goods property as well as goods. This draft also addresses additional issues relating to ~~bundled~~
4 ~~hybrid~~ transactions, mentioned in 2.d., below. The draft also provides an amended definition of
5 “control” of an electronic copy of a record evidencing chattel paper, which reflects a more
6 accurate and technologically flexible approach than the current definition.

7
8 *Money.* The draft includes a new definition of “money” in Article 1, which applies
9 throughout the UCC unless otherwise provided. It also includes amendments that define
10 “electronic money” and provide a definition of “control” of electronic money that tracks the
11 corresponding definition for control of controllable electronic records. Perfection of a security
12 interest in electronic money as original collateral must be by control, not filing. The draft
13 provides a new definition of “money” for purposes of Article 9 that excludes deposit accounts
14 (which could in the future be adopted by a government as money). The draft also updates the
15 take-free rules for transferees of money—both electronic money and tangible money—and
16 transferees of funds from deposit accounts.

17
18 For a more detailed description of the Article 9 amendments, see the Reporter’s Prefatory
19 Note to Article 9 Amendments.

20
21 *Control through another person.* Proposed revisions to the provisions on control in draft
22 §§ 9-104 (control of deposit accounts), 9-105 (control of authoritative electronic copies of
23 records, evidencing chattel paper), and 9-105A (control of electronic money ~~evidencing chattel~~
24 ~~paper~~) and in a proposed conforming modification to Section 8-106(d)(3) (control of security
25 entitlement) address control through the acknowledgment of a person in control. For similar
26 revisions, see draft § 7-106 (control of electronic document of title). For a discussion of these
27 proposed revisions, see draft § 12-105, Reporter’s Note 78.

28
29 *c. Payments amendments – UCC Articles 3 (negotiable instruments), 4 (bank*
30 *deposits and collections), and 4A (funds transfers).*

31
32 The draft proposes several amendments to Articles 3, 4 and 4A. The amendments relate
33 to negotiability, remote deposit capture, statements of account, the scope of Article 4A
34 (definition of payment order), and security procedures. The draft also deletes references to a
35 “writing” (which are changed to a “record”) and adopts a revised definition of “signed” for
36 specified sections of Article 4A. Many of the proposed changes are to the official comments and
37 are intended to further clarify the black letter text.

38
39 For a more detailed description of the payments amendments, see the Reporter’s
40 Prefatory Note to Payments Amendments.

41
42 *d. Other emerging technologies-related amendments*
43

44 The draft contains a revised definition of “conspicuous” in Article 1 and a revised and
45 updated draft official comment on the term. It adds to Article 1 the current standard definition of

1 “electronic” used by the ULC. It also adopts a revised definition of “signed” ~~for~~in Article 5
2 ~~(letters of credit)-1, which addresses records other than writings.~~

3
4 The draft revises Sections 2-102 and 2A-102 and related definitions to clarify the scope
5 of Articles 2 and 2A with respect to hybrid transactions. It also includes amendments to several
6 provisions of Articles 2 and 2A to change references to a “writing” or “written” communication
7 to refer instead to a “record.”

8
9 The draft proposes a new Section 7-106, defining “control” for electronic documents of
10 title. The revised section retains the general rule and the safe harbor under the current provision
11 and adds an additional safe harbor along the lines of the revised section on control of chattel
12 paper. The draft also includes revisions to the official comments to several provisions of Articles
13 7 and 9, in particular to clarify the treatment of nonnegotiable documents of title.

14
15 Finally, the draft proposes several amendments to the official comments to Article 8
16 (investment securities) to make clear that a controllable electronic record may be a “financial
17 asset” credited to a securities account.

18
19 *e. Miscellaneous amendments*
20

21 The draft contains revised definitions for Article 9 of the terms “assignee” and
22 “assignor,” which conform to current descriptions in the official comments. It also amends the
23 definition of “person” to include a protected series established under non-UCC law.

24
25 The draft proposes to revise Section 5-116 to cure an ambiguity relating to the separate
26 status of bank branches in the current provision and to override incorrectly decided case law
27 arising from that ambiguity.

28
29 *3. Organization of the draft*
30

31 Revised provisions of the UCC text and comments appear in the order that they would
32 appear in the UCC—beginning with Article 1 and continuing through Article 12.

1 **UNIFORM COMMERCIAL CODE AND EMERGING TECHNOLOGIES**

2 **ARTICLE 1**

3 **GENERAL PROVISIONS**

4 **Section 1-107. Section Captions.**

5 Section captions are part of the [Uniform Commercial Code].

6 **Official Comment**

7 * * *

8
9
10 1. Section captions are a part of the text of the Uniform Commercial Code, and not mere
11 surplusage. This is not the case, however, with respect to subsection headings appearing in
12 ~~Article 9~~ Articles 9 and Article 12, and Annex A (Transition Provisions). See ~~Comment 3 to~~
13 ~~Section Sections~~ Section 9-101, Comment 3 (“subsection headings are not a part of the official
14 text itself and have not been approved by the sponsors.”); draft § 12-101, Comment.

15 * * *

16 * * *

17

18 **Section 1-201. General Definitions.**

19 * * *

20 (b) Subject to definitions contained in other articles of the ~~the~~ Uniform Commercial
21 Code] that apply to particular articles or parts thereof:

22 * * *

23 (10) “Conspicuous”, with reference to a term, means so written, displayed, or
24 presented that a reasonable person against which it is to operate ought to have noticed it.

25 [Whether a term is “conspicuous” or not is a decision for the court.] ~~Conspicuous terms include~~
26 ~~the following:~~

27 ~~(A) a heading in capitals equal to or greater in size than the surrounding~~
28 ~~text, or in contrasting type, font, or color to the surrounding text of the same or lesser size; and~~

29 ~~(B) language in the body of a record or display in larger type than the~~
30 ~~surrounding text, or in contrasting type, font, or color to the surrounding text of the same size, or~~

1 ~~set off from surrounding text of the same size by symbols or other marks that call attention to the~~
2 ~~language.~~

3 * * *

4 (16) “Document of title” means a record (i) that in the regular course of business
5 or financing is treated as adequately evidencing that the person in possession or control of the
6 record ~~it~~ is entitled to receive, control, hold, and dispose of the record and the goods the record
7 covers and (ii) that purports to be issued by or addressed to a bailee and to cover goods in the
8 bailee’s possession which are either identified or are fungible portions of an identified mass. The
9 term includes a bill of lading, transport document, dock warrant, dock receipt, warehouse receipt,
10 and order for delivery of goods. An electronic document of title means a document of title
11 evidenced by a record consisting of information stored in an electronic medium. A tangible
12 document of title means a document of title evidenced by a record consisting of information that
13 is inscribed on a tangible medium.

14 * * *

15 (16A) “Electronic” means relating to technology having electrical, digital,
16 magnetic, wireless, optical, electromagnetic, or similar capabilities.

17 * * *

18 (21) “Holder” means:

19 (A) the person in possession of a negotiable instrument that is payable
20 either to bearer or to an identified person that is the person in possession; or

21 (B) the person in possession of a negotiable tangible document of title if
22 the goods are deliverable either to bearer or to the order of the person in possession; or

1 (C) the person in control, other than pursuant to Section 7-106(d), of a
2 negotiable electronic document of title.

3 * * *

4 (24) “Money” means a medium of exchange that:

5 (A) Is is currently authorized or adopted as a medium of exchange by a
6 domestic or foreign government, by an intergovernmental organization, or pursuant to an
7 agreement between two or more governments.

8 (B) The term includes a monetary unit of account established by an
9 intergovernmental organization, or pursuant to an agreement between two or more countries.
10 Was initially issued, created, The term does not include an electronic record that is a medium of
11 exchange recorded and transferable in a system that existed and operated for the medium of
12 exchange before the medium of exchange was authorized or distributed adopted by a domestic or
13 foreign such a government, by an intergovernmental or organization, or pursuant to such an
14 agreement between 2 or more governments..

15 * * *

16 (27) “Person” means an individual, corporation, business trust, estate, trust,
17 partnership, limited liability company, association, joint venture, government, governmental
18 subdivision, agency, or instrumentality, public corporation, or any other legal or commercial
19 entity. The term includes a protected series, however denominated, of an entity if the protected
20 series is established under law other than the [Uniform Commercial Code] that limits, or limits if
21 conditions specified under the law are satisfied, the ability of a creditor of the entity or of any
22 other protected series of the entity to satisfy a claim from assets of the protected series.

23 * * *

(37) “Signed” includes using any symbol executed or adopted with present intention to adopt or accept a writing and, with respect to a record that is not a writing, includes the attachment to or logical association with the record of an electronic symbol, sound, or process with the present intent to adopt or accept the record. “Sign” and “Signature” have corresponding meanings.

Legislative Note:

A state should enact the amendment to paragraph (b)(27) whether the state has enacted the Uniform Protected Series Act (2017) or otherwise recognizes a protected series under its law. Because the sentence applies only under the enacting state’s Uniform Commercial Code, inclusion of the sentence does not require the enacting state to recognize a limit on liability of a protected series organized under the law of another state or a limit on liability of the entity that established the protected series. It clarifies the status of a protected series as a “person” under the choice-of-law and substantive law rules of the enacting state’s Uniform Commercial Code.

Official Comment

* * *

10. “Conspicuous.” Derived from former Section 1-201(10). This definition states the general standard that to be conspicuous a term ought to be noticed by a reasonable person. [Whether a term is conspicuous is an issue for the court.] Subparagraphs (A) and (B) set out several methods for making a term conspicuous. Requiring that a term be conspicuous blends a notice function (the term ought to be noticed) and a planning function (giving guidance to the party relying on the term regarding how that result can be achieved). Although these paragraphs indicate some of the methods for making a term attention calling, the test is whether attention can reasonably be expected to be called to it. The statutory language should not be construed to permit a result that is inconsistent with that test. Whether a term is conspicuous is based on the totality of the circumstances and requires a case-by-case, fact-intensive analysis.

The attributes of a reasonable person against which a term is to operate variescan vary depending upon the nature of the transaction and the market in which the transaction occurs. For example, assume that a merchant of goods wishes to disclaim the implied warranty of merchantability or fitness for particular purpose in its contracts for sale or lease. Depending on the particular contract, the person against which that term is to operate may be a large business buyer or lessee, a small business, or a consumer. Similarly, the determination of whether a term is conspicuous may, depending on the context, yield a different conclusion when the term iswas the subject of negotiation or discussion than when the term iswas used in a standard form agreement that was not the subject of such negotiation or discussion.

1 The examples formerly in Paragraphs (A) and (B) of the definition were deleted because
2 they focus primarily on terms in a writing and no brief set of statutory examples could
3 adequately capture what is required for terms in an online record to be conspicuous. The factors
4 illustrated by the examples remain important and are included in the listing of factors set forth
5 below. Presenting a term in an online record ~~in a manner such~~ raises issues that ~~a reasonable~~
6 ~~person ought to notice it carries with it~~ differ in some ~~uncertainties not~~ respects from the issues
7 associated with presenting the same term in a writing ~~because the person presenting the term~~
8 ~~might not fully control the appearance of the relevant words as viewed by the person presented~~
9 ~~with the term. How. For example, how~~ a term appears depends to some extent on the equipment
10 and settings of the reasonable person presented with the term, ~~and. Factors to be considered in~~
11 ~~determining whether a term that in an online record is conspicuous when displayed on a desktop~~
12 ~~computer might not be conspicuous when displayed on a smaller device.~~ are also set forth below.

13
14 The test of whether a term is conspicuous remains constant notwithstanding the different
15 contexts referenced ~~[above]~~. A term is conspicuous if its appearance is such that it ought to be
16 noticed by a reasonable person against which the term is to operate. If the term is used in a form
17 or format that is intended to operate against a group of persons, the determination is to be made
18 with reference to a reasonable member of the group, taking into account all aspects of the
19 transaction and the education, sophistication, disabilities, and other attributes of an average
20 member of the group. If the term is intended to operate against a single person, it is conspicuous
21 if it ought to have come to the attention of a reasonable person in the position of the actual
22 person against which it is to operate.

23
24 Factors ~~that can be~~ relevant to whether a term is conspicuous include, ~~but are not limited~~
25 ~~to,~~ the following:

26
27 (i) The appearance of the text in contrast to the surrounding text. This includes ~~the use of~~
28 a font of a larger size or different color, and the use of emphasis through bolding, italics, capital
29 letters, or other means. However, terms in bold, capital letters might not be conspicuous, ~~for~~
30 ~~example,~~ if placed among other terms also in bold, capital letters so there is no contrast with the
31 surrounding text.

32
33 (ii) The placement of the term in the document. A term appearing ~~in~~at, or hyperlinked
34 from, text at the beginning of a document, or near the place where the person against which the
35 term is to operate must signify assent, is more likely to be conspicuous than a term in the middle
36 of a lengthy document.

37
38 (iii) ~~If terms are available only through the use of a hyperlink, in addition to the~~
39 ~~placement of the hyperlink as described above, factors to be considered include whether there is~~
40 ~~language drawing attention to the hyperlink and describing its function, and the size and color of~~
41 ~~the text used for the hyperlink and any related language.~~

42
43 (iv) The heading used, if any. A misleading heading ~~—~~ such as the heading “Warranty”
44 for a paragraph that contains a disclaimer of warranties ~~—~~ might cause a reasonable person to
45 fail to notice the language that would disclaim warranties, so that the term would not be
46 conspicuous.

(ivv) The effort needed to access the term. A term accessible only by triggering multiple hyperlinks is less likely to be conspicuous than a term accessible from a single hyperlink.

This definition deals only with requirements that a term be conspicuous (or noted conspicuously;) found in particular provisions of [the Uniform Commercial Code;]. Other protective doctrines designed to assure that assent is meaningful that are part of general contract law may also apply. See Section 1-103(b).

* * *

24. “Money.” ~~Substantively identical to former Section 1-201. The test is that of sanction of government, whether by authorization before issue or adoption afterward, which recognizes the circulating medium as a part of the official currency of that government. The narrow view that money is limited to legal tender is rejected. [To be revised to reflect discussion in Reporter’s Note 4.]~~

Reporter’s Note

1. “Conspicuous.”

a. Issue of fact. ~~Whether a term is conspicuous should be determined by the finder of facts. Thus, the *or law*. The sentence in the definition assigning providing that the issue to is one for the court is was deleted; in earlier drafts but has been restored in square brackets. Concern was expressed that its deletion might make a summary judgment more difficult to obtain. The drafting committee should give further consideration to this issue.~~

b. Examples. Deletion of the examples ~~will facilitate~~ facilitates a more thorough discussion of the conspicuous definition in the revised official comment.

~~b.c.~~ Current UCC Provisions Using “Conspicuous” or “Conspicuously.”

Article 2. Certain disclaimers of warranty (2-316(2)).

Article 2A. Certain disclaimers of warranty (2A-214(2), (3), (4)); certain terms in consumer leases (2A-303(7)).

Article 3. Statement that promise or order is not negotiable (3-104(d)); certain statements related to tender of instrument in full satisfaction of claim (3-311(b), (c)(1)).

Article 7. Statement that document is not negotiable (7-104(c)); statement that issuer does not know whether goods were received or conform to description (7-203(1)); statement in relation to foreclosure of warehouse’s lien that goods will be advertised for sale and sold at auction (7-210(b)(2); requirement that notice of sale be posted in conspicuous places (not used with reference to a term) (7-210(b)(5)); statement identifying document as duplicate (7-402); indication by bailee of partial delivery (7-403(c)(2)).

Article 8. Transfer restriction noted on certificate (8-204(a)).]

2. “*Document of title.*” This definition is not changed and is provided here for convenience of reference.

3. “*Electronic.*” The draft adopts the standard ULC definition.

4. “*Money.*” The definition of “money” applies to the term as used in the UCC. The definition does not determine whether an asset constitutes “money” for other purposes.

Only something currently authorized or adopted as a medium of exchange ~~can be money by a government, by an intergovernmental organization, or pursuant to an agreement between two or more governments can be money.~~ Coins and paper currency formerly issued by a government but now owned and traded only for their numismatic or historical value, and not as a medium of exchange, are not money.

~~To be money, a medium of exchange must be initially issued, created, or distributed by a government, by an intergovernmental organization, or pursuant to an agreement between two or more governments. For this purpose, a currency printed or minted by a country’s central bank, treasury, or other similar department, and then distributed or circulated by or on behalf of the country, is money. So too is a currency printed or minted, and then circulated, by or on behalf of several countries, such as the Euro. An electronic medium of exchange established pursuant to a country’s law and initially distributed by or on behalf of the country that is recorded and transferable in a system that did not exist or did not operate for that medium of exchange before the electronic record was authorized or adopted by the country’s government also constitutes money. This is so even if ownership is established or maintained through a blockchain or other system not operated by the government. In contrast, a medium of exchange initially issued, created, or distributed by one or more private parties is not money solely because the government of one or more countries later authorizes or adopts it as the pre-existing medium of exchange.~~

~~Note that the qualification that a medium of exchange must have been “initially issued, created, or distributed” by particular types of entities, which is used in the second sentence of this definition, is a subset of the broader, generally applicable limitation that the medium of exchange must be “authorized or adopted” by such entities, used in the first sentence. Updated official comments to this definition will address in more detail the meaning of the adoption or authorization of a medium of exchange.~~

~~Although the term “money” is used in several Articles, the definition is most relevant under Article 9. Prior to the amendments to this Section, money was generally understood to include only tangible coins, bills, notes, and the like. This worked well under Article 9, which provided that the only method of perfecting a security interest in money as original collateral was by taking possession. See former Section 9-312(b)(3). The amended definition of money is broader and includes both “tangible money” (things that were money under the prior, more limited definition) and “electronic money” (a new type of collateral under Article 9). A security interest in electronic money as original collateral may be perfected only by control. Draft~~

1 § 9-102(a)(31A) (defining “electronic money”); 9-312(b)(4) (perfection by control for electronic
2 money).

3
4 The draft deletes the second sentence of the existing definition, which covers, *e.g.*,
5 special drawing rights (SDRs) created by the International Monetary Fund. Despite the deletion,
6 a monetary unit of account would be “money” if it also a medium of exchange that falls within
7 the definition as revised. (SDRs, however, are not a medium of exchange.)
8

9 *Examples:* The following examples illustrate the revised definition of “money.”
10

11 ~~{~~**Example 1:** Nation A enacts legislation authorizing or adopting ~~seashells as a medium~~
12 ~~of exchange. Seashells do not thereby become “money” because Nation A did not~~
13 ~~initially issue, create, or distribute the seashells.}~~
14

15 ~~**Example 2:** Nation B enacts legislation authorizing or adopting~~ an existing crypto
16 ~~currency, (spitcoin),~~ created on a private blockchain, as a medium of exchange. ~~The~~
17 ~~crypto-currency Spitcoin~~ does not thereby become “money” because it was recorded and
18 transferable in a system that existed and operated for that crypto currency before the
19 electronic record was authorized or adopted by Nation A.
20

21 **Example 2:** Nation B ~~did not initially issue, create, or distribute the~~ creates a new crypto
22 currency.
23

24 ~~**Example 3:** Nation C creates a crypto-currency- (beebuck)~~ and authorizes or adopts it as
25 a medium of exchange. ~~Nation C’s crypto-currency is “money.”~~ Beebuck is “money.”
26 Beebuck is not recorded and transferable in a system that existed and operated for that
27 crypto currency before the electronic record was authorized or adopted by Nation B.
28

29 **Example 3:** Nation C enacts legislation authorizing or adopting as a medium of
30 exchange beebuck, the crypto currency previously adopted by Nation B in Example 2.
31 Although beebuck is recorded and transferable in a system that existed and operated for
32 beebuck before it was authorized or adopted by Nation C, beebuck was *already* money
33 when authorized or adopted by Nation C. Consequently, Beebuck is “money.” Nation C’s
34 action had no relevance or effect on the characterization of beebuck as money.
35

36 The current official comment will be deleted and replaced by official comments to this section
37 and to appropriate sections in Article 9 which reflect the explanations and descriptions in this
38 Note.

39 5. “*Person.*” Except for the new treatment of a “protected series,” the draft retains the
40 UCC’s existing definition of “person.” Although the UCC definition differs from the ULC’s
41 current standard definition, the Drafting Committee sees no reason to create uncertainty by

1 revising the UCC definition.

2
3 As the Legislative Note explains, by enacting the draft amendment, an enacting state
4 would treat a protected series, whether organized under the law of the enacting state or under the
5 law of another state, as a “person” for purposes of the UCC. The draft uses the ULC’s standard
6 language to accomplish this purpose.
7

8 The added second sentence of the definition of “person” would provide needed clarity as
9 to the status of a protected series for purposes of the Uniform Commercial Code. A number of
10 states have enacted statutes that provide for protected series within a limited liability company or
11 other unincorporated organization. These statutes afford rights and impose duties upon a
12 protected series and generally empower a protected series to conduct its own activities under its
13 own name.
14

15 Providing that a protected series is a “person” for purposes of the enacting state’s
16 Uniform Commercial Code will expressly permit a protected series, whether created under the
17 law of the enacting state or of another state, to be a “seller” or a “buyer” under Article 2, a
18 “lessor” or a “lessee” under Article 2A, or an “organization” and a “debtor” under Article 9, and,
19 if the law under which the protected series is organized requires a public filing for the protected
20 series to be recognized under that law, a “registered organization” under Article 9. These matters
21 are not clear under the current Uniform Commercial Code.
22

23 * * *

24
25 6. “Signed.” The definition has been updated to provide that records other than writings
26 may be signed. Following the approach taken in the definition of “written”, the revised
27 definition also provides that the terms “sign” and “signature” have corresponding meanings.
28

29 * * *

30
31 **Section 1-103. Construction of [Uniform Commercial Code] to Promote its**
32 **Purposes and Policies; Applicability of Supplemental Principles of Law.**

33 (a) [The Uniform Commercial Code] must be liberally construed and applied to promote
34 its underlying purposes and policies, which are:

35 (1) to simplify, clarify, and modernize the law governing commercial
36 transactions;

37 (2) to permit the continued expansion of commercial practices through custom,
38 usage, and agreement of the parties; and

(3) to make uniform the law among the various jurisdictions.

(b) Unless displaced by the particular provisions of [the Uniform Commercial Code], the principles of law and equity, including the law merchant and the law relative to capacity to contract, principal and agent, estoppel, fraud, misrepresentation, duress, coercion, mistake, bankruptcy, and other validating or invalidating cause supplement its provisions.

Official Comment

* * *

2. Applicability of supplemental principles of law. Subsection (b) states the basic relationship of the Uniform Commercial Code to supplemental bodies of law. The Uniform Commercial Code was drafted against the backdrop of existing bodies of law, including the common law and equity, and relies on those bodies of law to supplement its provisions in many important ways. At the same time, the Uniform Commercial Code is the primary source of commercial law rules in areas that it governs, and its rules represent choices made by its drafters and the enacting legislatures about the appropriate policies to be furthered in the transactions it covers. Therefore, while principles of common law and equity may *supplement* provisions of the Uniform Commercial Code, they may not be used to *supplant* its provisions, or the purposes and policies those provisions reflect, unless a specific provision of the Uniform Commercial Code provides otherwise. In the absence of such a provision, the Uniform Commercial Code preempts principles of common law and equity that are inconsistent with either its provisions or its purposes and policies.

The language of subsection (b) is intended to reflect both the concept of supplementation and the concept of preemption. Some courts, however, had difficulty in applying the identical language of former Section 1-103 to determine when other law appropriately may be applied to supplement the Uniform Commercial Code, and when that law has been displaced by the Code. Some decisions applied other law in situations in which that application, while not inconsistent with the text of any particular provision of the Uniform Commercial Code, clearly was inconsistent with the underlying purposes and policies reflected in the relevant provisions of the Code. See, e.g., *Sheerbonnet, Ltd. v. American Express Bank, Ltd.*, 951 F. Supp. 403 (S.D.N.Y. 1995). In part, this difficulty arose from Comment 1 to former Section 1-103, which stated that “this section indicates the continued applicability to commercial contracts of all supplemental bodies of law except insofar as they are explicitly displaced by this Act.” The “explicitly displaced” language of that Comment did not accurately reflect the proper scope of Uniform Commercial Code preemption, which extends to displacement of other law that is inconsistent with the purposes and policies of the Uniform Commercial Code, as well as with its text.

These supplemental principles take into account developments in technology. For example, automated transactions and electronic agents are now widely recognized as being

1 capable of acting for a person who employs such tools. See generally Uniform Electronic
2 Transactions Act §§ 2(2), 2(6), and 14.

3
4 * * *

5
6 **Reporter's Note**

7
8 A cross-reference to the new paragraph in Comment 2 should be added to the official
9 comments to other appropriate sections, including Sections 1-201 (definitions of “agreement”
10 and “signed”) and 9-102 (definition of “authenticate”).

11
12 **Section 1-204. Value.** Except as otherwise provided in Articles 3, 4, ~~[and] 5, [and 6],~~
13 ~~[6,] and 12,~~ a person gives value for rights if the person acquires them:

14 (1) in return for a binding commitment to extend credit or for the extension of
15 immediately available credit, whether or not drawn upon and whether or not a charge-back is
16 provided for in the event of difficulties in collection;

17 (2) as security for, or in total or partial satisfaction of, a preexisting claim;

18 (3) by accepting delivery under a preexisting contract for purchase; or

19 (4) in return for any consideration sufficient to support a simple contract.

20 **Reporter's Note**

21 “*Value.*” The amendment to this section implements the policy choice described in
22 Reporter's Note 9 to draft § 12-104 by making the generally applicable definition of “value”
23 inapplicable to Article 12.

24
25 * * *

26
27 **ARTICLE 2**

28 **SALES**

29 * * *

30 **Section 2-102. Scope; Certain Security and Other Transactions Excluded From**
31 **This Article.**

(1) Unless the context otherwise requires and except as provided in ~~subsection[s] (2) and (4), this Article applies to transactions in goods;~~ subsections (3) and (4), this Article applies to transactions in goods;

(2) If the ~~predominant purpose~~ goods aspects of a hybrid transaction ~~is a sale predominate,~~ this Article applies to the transaction.

(3) If ~~a the goods aspects of a hybrid transaction includes a sale but the predominant purpose of a transaction is do~~ not a sale predominate, the provisions of this Article ~~that which~~ relate solely to goods primarily to the goods aspects of the transaction and not to the transaction as a whole apply.

(4) This Article ~~it~~ does not apply to any transaction which although in the form of an unconditional contract to sell or present sale is intended to operate only as a security transaction nor does this Article impair or repeal any statute regulating sales to consumers, farmers, or other ~~specified classes of buyers.~~ specified classes of buyers.

(5) This Section does not preclude in appropriate circumstances the application of other law to the aspects of a hybrid transaction which do not relate to the goods even if the goods aspects of the transaction predominate.

Official Comment

Prior Uniform Statutory Provision: Section 75, Uniform Sales Act.

Changes: Section 75 has been rephrased.

Purposes of Changes and New Matter:

1. ~~To make~~ This section makes it clear that: ~~The the~~ the Article leaves substantially unaffected the law relating to purchase money security such as conditional sale or chattel mortgage though it regulates the general sales aspects of such transactions. “Security transaction” is used in the same sense as in the Article on Secured Transactions (Article 9).

1 2. Relevant factors in determining whether the goods aspects of a hybrid transaction
2 predominate include the language of the agreement and the portion of the total price that is
3 attributable to the goods, although neither is determinative. An agreed-upon allocation of a
4 portion of the total the price to the goods is ordinarily binding on the parties. Because the
5 definition of “goods” expressly includes “specially manufactured goods,” services involved in
6 manufacturing goods are normally attributable to the goods aspects of the transaction. Services in
7 designing specially manufactured goods, however, would not normally be attributable to the
8 goods aspects of the transaction.
9

10 3. If the goods aspects of a hybrid transaction predominate, then this Article applies to the
11 transaction. However, the application of this Article to a hybrid transaction does not preclude the
12 application of principles of law and equity to supplement the provisions of this Article, see
13 Section 1-103(b), nor does it preclude, in appropriate circumstances, the application of other law
14 to the non-sale-of-goods aspects of the transaction.
15

16 **Example 1.** Owner hires Contractor to replace the roof on a structure. As part of
17 the transaction, Contractor promises to remove the existing shingles and install
18 new shingles, which Contractor is providing. The transaction is a hybrid
19 transaction because it involves the passing of title to the new shingles and the
20 provision of services. If the goods aspects of the transaction predominate, this
21 Article applies to the transaction.
22

23 **Example 2.** In a single transaction, Seller agrees to sell goods to Buyer and to
24 license to Buyer some software that enables the goods to operate. If the goods
25 aspects of the transaction predominate, this Article applies to the transaction.
26 Nevertheless, because principles of law and equity also apply unless displaced by
27 particular provisions the Uniform Commercial Code, see Section 1-103(b), and
28 this Article does not displace other law relating to whether the software conforms
29 to the contract, other law determines whether the licensed software conforms to
30 the contract.
31

32 **Example 3.** In a single transaction, Seller agrees to sell a warehouse full of goods
33 to Buyer. The transaction includes the goods contained in the warehouse, the
34 warehouse itself, and the real property on which the warehouse is situated. The
35 goods aspects of the transaction predominate. Even though this Article applies to
36 the transaction, that does not preclude application of applicable real property law.
37 Accordingly, whether the sale of the real property complies with the applicable
38 requirements of real property law is determined by law other than this Article.
39 Other law will also determine whether consummation of the sale of the real
40 property is a condition to the parties’ obligations to buy and sell the goods.
41

42 4. If the non-goods aspects of a hybrid transaction predominate, under subsection (3), the
43 provisions of this Article relating primarily to the goods apply. These provisions include those
44 relating to: warranties under Sections 2-212, 2-313, 2-314, 2-315, 2-316, 2-317, 2-318; tender of
45 delivery and risk of loss under Sections 2-503, 2-504, 2-509, 2-510; acceptance, rejection, and
46 cure under Sections 2-508, 2-601, 2-602, 2-603, 2-604, 2-605, 2-606; and remedies for

1 non-delivery of the goods or for tender of nonconforming goods under Sections 2-711, 7-712,
2 7-713, 2-714, 2-715, 2-716. In contrast, the provisions of this Article dealing with the transaction
3 as a whole do not apply. These provisions include those relating to: the requirement of a writing,
4 Section 2-201; contract formation, Sections 2-204 through 2-207; and whether consideration is
5 needed to modify the agreement, Section 2-209.

6
7 **Example 4.** Owner sends a purchase order to Contractor offering to hire
8 Contractor to replace the roof on a structure. The proposed transaction involves
9 Contractor removing the existing shingles and installing new shingles, which
10 Contractor is to provide. Contractor responds with a confirmation purporting to
11 accept but containing additional and different terms. The transaction is a hybrid
12 transaction because it involves the passing of title to the new shingles and the
13 provision of services. If the goods aspects of the transaction do not predominate,
14 this Article does not apply to determine whether a contract was formed and, if so,
15 what its terms are. Such matters are governed by other law.

16
17 **Example 5.** Under the facts of Example 1, assume that the goods aspects of the
18 transaction do not predominate. The agreement provides that the job will be
19 completed by December 31. Due to unforeseen circumstances affecting the
20 availability of supplies and labor, the job is not completed by the agreed-upon
21 deadline. Whether Contractor's failure to perform on time is excused is
22 determined by general contract law, rather than by this Article (Section 2-615).

23
24 **Example 6.** Under the facts of Example 1, assume that the goods aspects of the
25 transaction do not predominate. A dispute between the parties arises and during
26 litigation one party seeks to admit evidence of usage of trade to supplement or
27 explain the parties' written agreement. If the proffered evidence relates to the
28 goods aspects of the transaction, the parol evidence rule in this Article, Section
29 2-202 applies. If the proffered evidence relates to the other aspects of the
30 transaction or to the transaction as a whole, other law will govern the
31 admissibility of the evidence.

32
33 **Example 7.** Restaurateur hires Remodeler to remodel Restaurateur's kitchen. The
34 transaction requires Remodeler to supply a new oven meeting detailed
35 specifications but the services aspects of the transaction predominate. The oven
36 supplied does not meet a minor aspect of those specifications (but does
37 substantially satisfy the specifications as a whole). Whether Restaurateur may
38 reject the oven (or must retain it subject to price adjustment), whether
39 Restaurateur has a right to cover by purchasing a substitute oven, and the measure
40 of Restaurateur's damages for the oven's nonconformity to the specifications are
41 determined by this Article.

42
43 **Example 8.** Restaurateur hires Remodeler to remodel Restaurateur's kitchen by a
44 specified completion date. The transaction requires Remodeler to supply a new
45 oven but the services aspects of the transaction predominate. Remodeler breaches

1 by failing to complete the project by the specified date. The measure of
2 Restaurateur's damages for Remodeler's breach is not determined by this Article.
3

4 5. The rules of subsections (2) and (3) are essentially gap fillers that apply when
5 the parties' agreement is silent on what law governs the different aspects of their
6 transaction. In general, parties are free to preclude the application of this Article to the
7 aspects of their transaction that are not about the sale of goods.
8

9 **Example 9.** Robotics Manufacturer contracts to design, build, and sell customized
10 robotics to Car Maker. The transaction includes a sale of goods, the provision of
11 services, and a license of the software needed to operate the robotics, and is
12 therefore a hybrid transaction. The parties may, in their agreement, provide that
13 Article 2 does not govern the services aspects of the transaction or the software
14 license.
15

16 * * *
17

18 Reporter's Note

19

20 1. Background on the Law

21 Many ordinary transactions involve a sale of goods and a sale, lease, or license of other
22 property or the provision of services. The statutory text of Article 2¹ provides no guidance on
23 whether or to what extent the Article applies to such a "hybrid" transaction, although by defining
24 a "sale" as "the passing of title [to goods] from the seller to the buyer for a price," § 1-206
25 arguably brings hybrid transactions within the scope of Article 2.² A similar issue can arise with
26 respect to a lease of goods.

27 For more than a half century, courts have dealt with this issue. Their principal approach
28 has been to apply the "predominant purpose test," under which Article 2 will apply either in full
29 or not at all to the transaction. Under the predominant purpose test, courts seek to determine
30 whether the transaction, at its inception, is predominantly about the goods or if, instead, the other
31 aspects of the transaction predominate. Relevant factors in making this determination include:
32 (i) the language used in the agreement; (ii) the portion of the total price (or cost) allocable to the
33 goods, and whether the agreement itself includes such an allocation; and (iii) the nature of the
34 seller's business (i.e., whether the seller is in the business of selling goods of that kind). Because
35 the factors often point to different conclusions, application of the predominant purpose test is
36 often difficult, and leads to both inconsistent results and uncertainty.

¹ For simplicity, the remainder of this Note refers principally to sales of goods and to Article 2, and refers only occasionally to leases and to Article 2A. That decision should not be interpreted as a denigration of leases or other issues that hybrid transactions create with respect to leases.

² Technically, Article 2 applies to "transactions in goods." See § 2-102. However, the terms "buyer," "seller," "contract," and "agreement" are all generally defined in reference to a sale of goods, see §§ 2-103(1), 2-106(1), and most of Article 2's provisions refer to at least one of those terms.

1 Some courts have approached the problem of hybrid transactions differently. The
2 Maryland Court of Appeals somewhat famously used the “gravamen of the claim” test to deal
3 with a claim about an allegedly defective diving board supplied in connection with a transaction
4 for the installation of an in-ground swimming pool.³ The court’s decision was based, however,
5 on some non-uniform language in Maryland’s version of § 2-316, and the gravamen of the claim
6 test has neither had significant traction outside Maryland nor been consistently used in Maryland.
7 That might be due in part because the gravamen of the claim test can also be difficult to apply.

8 Other courts have, either expressly or implicitly, used what is sometimes referred to as
9 the “bifurcation approach.” Under this approach, Article 2 applies to the sale-of-goods aspect of
10 the transaction and other law applies to the other aspects of the transaction.⁴ The bifurcation
11 approach is similar to the gravamen of the claim, but instead of applying all of Article 2 to some
12 (but not all) types of claims relating to a hybrid transaction, it distinguishes the provisions in
13 Article 2 that deal with the goods from those that deal with the transaction as a whole, and
14 applies only the former in a hybrid transaction.

15 2. Approach Taken in the Draft

16 Each of the alternative approaches for dealing with hybrid transactions has its problems.
17 The predominant purpose test is difficult to apply and, when the non-sale-of-goods aspects of the
18 transaction predominate, the implied warranties in §§ 2-314 and 2-315 do not apply even though
19 there might be no good reason for them not to. The gravamen of the claim test is also difficult to
20 apply and can lead to intractable problems. For example, if Article 2 applies to only some but
21 not all of the claims asserted, it is very unclear whether and how to apply the provisions of
22 Article 2 that deal with the transaction as a whole, such as the Statute of Frauds in § 2-201 and
23 the parol evidence rule in § 2-202. The bifurcation approach, creates the challenging problem of
24 determining which Code provisions apply to a hybrid transaction and which do not.

25 Operating on the assumption that, in part due to emerging technologies, hybrid
26 transactions are and will continue to increase – in total numbers, in the dollar amount of their
27 collective price, and as a percentage of number transactions involving a sale or lease of goods –
28 the draft seeks to provide more clarity to the law by adopting the bifurcation approach and
29 providing extensive comments on how to apply it.

30 To do this, the draft includes a definition of “hybrid transaction” in Article 2 and “hybrid
31 lease” in Article 2A, and amendments to the scope section of each Article. In each case, the
32 proposed amendments on scope set up a two-tiered test. If the goods aspects of the hybrid
33 transaction or hybrid lease predominates, then the Article applies. If the other aspects of the
34 hybrid transaction or hybrid lease predominates, then the provisions of the Article which relate
35 primarily to the goods, but not with the transaction as a whole, apply.

36
³ Anthony Pools v. Sheehan, 455 A.2d 434 (Md. 1983).

⁴ See, e.g., TK Power, Inc. v. Textron, Inc., 433 F. Supp. 2d 1058 (N.D. Cal. 2006); H.
Hirschfield Sons, C. v. Colt Industries Operating Corp., 309 N.W.2d 714 (Mich. Ct. App. 1981);
Stephenson v. Frazier, 399 N.E.2d 794 (Ind. Ct. App. 1980); Miller v. Belk, 207 S.E.2d 792
(N.C. Ct. App. 1974); Melms v. Mitchell, 512 P.2d 1336 (Or. 1973); Foster v. Colorado Radio
Corp., 381 F.2d 222 (10th Cir. 1967).

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
0
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
0

(4) “Cancellation” occurs when either party puts an end to the contract for breach by the other and its effect is the same as that of “termination” except that the cancelling party also retains any remedy for breach of the whole contract or any unperformed balance.

(5) “Hybrid transaction” means a single transaction involving a sale of goods and a sale, lease, or license of other property or the provision of services.

Official Comment

Prior Uniform Statutory Provision: Subsection (1)—Section 1(1) and (2), Uniform Sales Act; Subsection (2)—none, but subsection generally continues policy of Sections 11, 44 and 69, Uniform Sales Act; Subsections (3) and (4)—none.

Changes: Completely rewritten.

Purposes of Changes and New Matter:

1. Subsection (1): “Contract for sale” is used as a general concept throughout this Article, but the rights of the parties do not vary according to whether the transaction is a present sale or a contract to sell unless the Article expressly so provides.

2. Subsection (2): It is in general intended to continue the policy of requiring exact performance by the seller of his obligations as a condition to his right to require acceptance. However, the seller is in part safeguarded against surprise as a result of sudden technicality on the buyer’s part by the provisions of Section 2–508 on seller’s cure of improper tender or delivery. Moreover usage of trade frequently permits commercial leeways in performance and the language of the agreement itself must be read in the light of such custom or usage and also, prior course of dealing, and in a long term contract, the course of performance.

3. Subsections (3) and (4): These subsections are intended to make clear the distinction carried forward throughout this Article between termination and cancellation.

4. In some transactions, the passing of title to goods from the seller to the buyer in return for a price is part of a larger transaction. The other aspects of the transaction might involve the seller providing services to the buyer or the seller transferring to the buyer rights to other property other than goods. When the predominant purpose of. Such a transaction is to pass title to a “hybrid transaction,” as defined in new subsection (5). The “other property” in a hybrid transaction could be other goods; thus a sale of some goods in return for a price, and a lease of other goods is a hybrid transaction. Section 2-102 indicates the extent to which this Article applies to thea hybrid transaction.

If a5. A hybrid transaction includes is a single transaction. If contracting parties enter into separate agreements at the same time, each agreement must be evaluated separately to determine if it is a hybrid transaction.

Example 1. To sell an ongoing business, Seller and Buyer enter into three separate written agreements: (i) a sale of goods but the non-used in the business; (ii) an agreement for Seller to provide consulting services to Buyer for a period of six months; and (iii) a sale of intangible assets associated with the business.

1 Because the parties executed three separate agreements, and the agreement for the
2 sale of goods ~~aspect of the transaction predominates~~, does not involve a sale, lease,
3 or license of other property or the provision of services, that agreement is not a
4 hybrid transaction.

5
6 **Example 2.** To sell an ongoing business, Seller and Buyer enter into two separate
7 written agreements: (i) a sale of goods and intangible assets used in the business;
8 and (ii) an agreement for Seller to provide consulting services to Buyer for a
9 period of six months, and not to compete with Buyer for a period of one year. The
10 agreement to sell goods and intangible assets is a hybrid transaction.

11
12 Even when contracting parties entered into a single agreement involving both a sale of
13 goods and a sale, lease, or license of other property or the provision of services, the
14 agreement would not involve a single transaction, and hence the transaction would not be a
15 hybrid transaction, if the sale of goods is unrelated to the other aspects of the transaction
16 and the terms of the agreement relating to the sale of goods are readily severable from the
17 terms of the agreement relating to the other aspects of the transaction.

18
19 **Example 3.** Farmer A and Farmer B sign a written agreement pursuant to which
20 Farmer A will sell a tractor to Farmer B and Farmer A will board and feed Farmer
21 B's cattle until the cattle are sold. The agreement specifies a price for the tractor,
22 which is due upon delivery, and specifies a mechanism for determining the price
23 for Farmer A's services, which is to be paid when the cattle are sold. The parties
24 would have entered into an agreement to buy and sell the tractor even if they had
25 not entered into an agreement to board and feed the cattle, and vice-versa. The
26 transaction is not a hybrid transaction. Article 2 applies to the sale of the tractor.
27 Other law applies to the agreement to board and feed the cattle.

28
29 **Example 4.** In a single record, Landscaper agrees to sell plants to Homeowner
30 and to install the plants on Homeowner's property. The agreement specifies a
31 total price but provides no mechanism for determining what portion of the price is
32 allocable to the sale of plants and what portion is allocable to the installation
33 services. The transaction is a hybrid transaction.

34 **Reporter's Note**

35
36 See Reporter's Note to Section 2-102.

37 * * *

38 **Section 2-201. Formal Requirements; Statute of Frauds.**

39
40 (1) Except as otherwise provided in this section a contract for the sale of goods for the
41 price of \$500 or more is not enforceable by way of action or defense unless there is some writing

1 record sufficient to indicate that a contract for sale has been made between the parties and signed
2 by the party against whom enforcement is sought or by his authorized agent or broker. A ~~writing~~
3 record is not insufficient because it omits or incorrectly states a term agreed upon but the
4 contract is not enforceable under this paragraph beyond the quantity of goods shown in such
5 ~~writing~~ record.

6 (2) Between merchants if within a reasonable time a ~~[writing]~~ [record] in confirmation of
7 the contract and sufficient against the sender is received and the party receiving it has reason to
8 know its contents, it satisfies the requirements of subsection (3), ~~the 1~~) against such party unless
9 [written] [a record containing a] notice of objection to its contents is given within 10 days after it
10 is received.

11 Official Comment

12
13 * * *

14
15 ~~Purposes of Changes: The changed phraseology of this~~ **Purposes:** This section is intended to
16 make it clear that:

17
18 1. The required ~~writing~~ record need not contain all the material terms of the contract and
19 such material terms as are stated need not be precisely stated. All that is required is that the
20 ~~writing~~ record afford a basis for believing that the offered oral evidence rests on a real
21 transaction. It may be written in lead pencil on a scratch pad or another medium. It need not
22 indicate which party is the buyer and which the seller. The only term which must appear is the
23 quantity term which need not be accurately stated but recovery is limited to the amount stated.
24 The price, time and place of payment or delivery, the general quality of the goods, or any
25 particular warranties may all be omitted.

26
27 Special emphasis must be placed on the permissibility of omitting the price term in view
28 of the insistence of some courts on the express inclusion of this term even where the parties have
29 contracted on the basis of a published price list. In many valid contracts for sale the parties do
30 not mention the price in express terms, the buyer being bound to pay and the seller to accept a
31 reasonable price which the trier of the fact may well be trusted to determine. Again, frequently
32 the price is not mentioned since the parties have based their agreement on a price list or
33 catalogue known to both of them and this list serves as an efficient safeguard against perjury.
34 Finally, "market" prices and valuations that are current in the vicinity constitute a similar check.
35 Thus if the price is not stated in the memorandum it can normally be supplied without danger of

1 fraud. Of course if the “price” consists of goods rather than money the quantity of goods must be
2 stated.

3
4 Only three definite and invariable requirements as to the memorandum are made by this
5 subsection. First, it must evidence a contract for the sale of goods; second, it must be “signed”, a
6 word which includes any authentication which identifies the party to be charged; and third, it
7 must specify a quantity.

8
9 * * *

10
11 3. Between merchants, failure to answer a [written confirmation of] [record confirming]
12 a contract within ten days of receipt is tantamount to a [writing] [record] under subsection (2)
13 and is sufficient against both parties under subsection (1). The only effect, however, is to take
14 away from the party who fails to answer the defense of the Statute of Frauds; the burden of
15 persuading the trier of fact that a contract was in fact made orally prior to [the written
16 confirmation] [giving a record confirming a contract] is unaffected. Compare the effect of a
17 failure to reply under Section 2-207.

18
19 4. Failure to satisfy the requirements of this section does not render the contract void for
20 all purposes, but merely prevents it from being judicially enforced in favor of a party to the
21 contract. For example, a buyer who takes possession of goods as provided in an oral contract
22 which the seller has not meanwhile repudiated, is not a trespasser. Nor would the Statute of
23 Frauds provisions of this Article relating solely to the goods-section be a defense to a third
24 person who wrongfully induces a party to refuse to perform an oral contract, even though the
25 injured party cannot maintain an action for damages against the party so refusing to perform.

26
27 5. The requirement of “signing” is discussed in the comment to Section 1-201.

28
29 6. ~~It~~ For purposes of subsection (1), is not necessary that the ~~writing~~ record be delivered
30 to anybody. It need not be signed or authenticated by both parties but it is, of course, not
31 sufficient against one who has not signed it. Prior to a dispute no one can determine which
32 party’s signing of the memorandum may be necessary but from the time of contracting each
33 party should be aware that to him it is signing by the other which is important.

34
35 7. If the making of a contract is admitted in court, either in a written pleading, by
36 stipulation or by oral statement before the court, no additional ~~writing~~ record is necessary for
37 protection against fraud. Under this section it is no longer possible to admit the contract in court
38 and still treat the Statute as a defense. However, the. contract is not thus conclusively
39 established. The admission so made by a party is itself evidential against him of the truth of the
40 facts so admitted and of nothing more; as against the other party, it is not evidential at all.

41 Reporter’s Note

42
43
44 1. In furtherance of medium neutrality, references in subsection (1) to “writing” and
45 “written” have been changed to refer to a “record.”

2. The drafting committee should consider whether the writing requirement should be retained in subsection (2). If the writing requirement is retained, draft official comment 8 to draft § 2-207 should be moved to the official comments to this section.

* * *

Section 2-202. Final Written Expression: Parol or Extrinsic Evidence.

Terms with respect to which the confirmatory memoranda of the parties agree or which are otherwise set forth in a writing record intended by the parties as a final expression of their agreement with respect to such terms as are included therein may not be contradicted by evidence of any prior agreement or of a contemporaneous oral agreement but may be explained or supplemented

(a) by course of performance, course of dealing, or usage of trade (Section 1-303); and

(b) by evidence of consistent additional terms unless the court finds the writing record to

have been intended also as a complete and exclusive statement of the terms of the agreement.

Official Comment

Purposes:

1. This section definitely rejects:

(a) Any assumption that because a writing record has been worked out which is final on some matters, it is to be taken as including all the matters agreed upon;

(b) The premise that the language used has the meaning attributable to such language by rules of construction existing in the law rather than the meaning which arises out of the commercial context in which it was used; and

(c) The requirement that a condition precedent to the admissibility of the type of evidence specified in paragraph (a) is an original determination by the court that the language used is ambiguous.

2. Paragraph (a) makes admissible evidence of course of dealing, usage of trade and course of performance to explain or supplement the terms of any writing record stating the agreement of the parties in order that the true understanding of the parties as to the agreement

1 may be reached. Such writings records are to be read on the assumption that the course of prior
2 dealings between the parties and the usages of trade were taken for granted when the document
3 was phrased. Unless carefully negated they have become an element of the meaning of the words
4 used. Similarly, the course of actual performance by the parties is considered the best indication
5 of what they intended the writing record to mean.

6
7 3. Under paragraph (b) consistent additional terms, not reduced to writing a record, may
8 be proved unless the court finds that the writing record was intended by both parties as a
9 complete and exclusive statement of all the terms. If the additional terms are such that, if agreed
10 upon, they would certainly have been included in the document record in the view of the court,
11 then evidence of their alleged making must be kept from the trier of fact.

12 Reporter's Note

13
14
15 In furtherance of medium neutrality, references to a "writing" now refer to a "record."

16
17 * * *

18 § 2-203. Seals Inoperative.

19 The affixing of a seal to a writing record evidencing a contract for sale or an offer to buy
20 or sell goods does not constitute the writing record a sealed instrument and the law with respect
21 to sealed instruments does not apply. These to such a contract or offer.

22 Reporter's Note

23
24 In furtherance of medium neutrality, the reference to a "writing" now refers to a "record."

25 * * *

26 Section 2-205. Firm Offers.

27 An offer by a merchant to buy or sell goods in a signed writing record which by its terms
28 gives assurance that it will be held open is not revocable, for lack of consideration, during the
29 time stated or if no time is stated for a reasonable time, but in no event may such period of
30 irrevocability exceed three months; but any such term of assurance on a form supplied by the
31 offeree must be separately signed by the offeror.

32 Official Comment

33

1 * * *

2
3 **Purposes of Changes: Purposes:**

4
5 1. This section is intended to modify the former rule which required that “firm offers” be
6 sustained by consideration in order to bind, and to require instead that they must merely be
7 characterized as such and expressed in signed writings records.

8
9 2. The primary purpose of this section is to give effect to the deliberate intention of a
10 merchant to make a current firm offer binding. The deliberation is shown in the case of an
11 individualized document by the merchant’s signature to the offer, and in the case of an offer
12 included on a form supplied by the other party to the transaction by the separate signing of the
13 particular clause which contains the offer. “Signed” here also includes authentication but the
14 reasonableness of the authentication herein allowed must be determined in the light of the
15 purpose of the section. The circumstances surrounding the signing may justify something less
16 than a formal signature or initialing but typically the kind of authentication involved here would
17 consist of a minimum of initialing of the clause involved. A handwritten memorandum on the
18 writer’s letterhead purporting in its terms to “confirm” a firm offer already made would be
19 enough to satisfy this section, although not subscribed, since under the circumstances it could not
20 be considered a memorandum of mere negotiation and it would adequately show its own
21 authenticity. Similarly, an authorized telegram will suffice, and this is true even though the
22 original draft contained only a typewritten signature. However, despite settled courses of dealing
23 or usages of the trade whereby firm offers are made by oral communication and relied upon
24 without more evidence, such offers remain revocable under this Article since authentication by a
25 writing record is the essence of this section.

26
27 **Reporter’s Note**

28
29 In furtherance of medium neutrality, the reference to a signed “writing” now refers to a
30 signed “record.”

31
32 * * *

33
34 **Section 2-207. Additional Terms in Acceptance or Confirmation.**

35 * * *

36 **Official Comment**

37
38 * * *

39
40 8. Notwithstanding references in this Section and throughout this Article to
41 “writing,” “writings,” or “written,” the use by parties of a record other than a writing may be
42 given effect for purposes of this Article under law other than the [UCC], such as the Electronic
43 Signatures in Global and National Commerce Act, 15 U.S.C. Section 7001, et seq., [as
44 amended,] and the Uniform Electronic Transactions Act.

1
2 **Reporter's Note**
3

4 In furtherance of medium neutrality, the reference to a signed "writing" now refers to a
5 signed "record."
6

7 * * *
8

9 * * *

10 **Section 2-209. Modification, Rescission and Waiver.**

11 (1) An agreement modifying a contract within this Article needs no consideration to be
12 binding.

13 (2) A signed agreement which excludes modification or rescission except by a signed
14 writing record cannot be otherwise modified or rescinded, but except as between merchants such
15 a requirement on a form supplied by the merchant must be separately signed by the other party.

16 * * *

17 **Official Comment**
18

19 * * *
20

21 3. Subsections (2) and (3) are intended to protect against false allegations of oral
22 modifications. "Modification or rescission" includes abandonment or other change by mutual
23 consent, contrary to the decision in Green v. Doniger, 300 N.Y. 238, 90 N.E.2d 56 (1949); it
24 does not include unilateral "termination" or "cancellation" as defined in Section 2-106.
25

26 The Statute of Frauds provisions ~~include~~ of this Article are expressly applied to
27 modifications by subsection (3). Under those relating to: warranties under Sections 2-212, 2-313,
28 2-314, 2-315, 2-316, 2-317, 2-318; the passing of title to and transferring rights in the goods
29 under Sections 2-401, 2-402, 2-403; tender of delivery and risk of loss under Sections 2-503, 2-
30 504, 2-509, 2-510; provisions the "delivery and acceptance, rejection, and cure under Sections
31 2-508, 2-601, 2-602, 2-603, 2-604, 2-605, 2-606" test is limited to the goods which have been
32 accepted, that is, to the past. "Modification" for the future cannot therefore be conjured up by
33 oral testimony if the price involved is \$500.00 or more since such modification must be shown at
34 least by an authenticated memo. And since a memo is limited in its effect to the quantity of
35 goods set forth in it there is safeguard against oral evidence.
36

Illustration. Owner hires Contractor to replace the roof on a structure. As part of the transaction, Contractor promises to remove the existing shingles and install new shingles, which Contractor is providing. The transaction is in part a sale of goods because it involves the passing of title to the new shingles, even though the transaction also involves extensive services. If the goods aspect of the transaction predominates, the entire transaction is a contract for sale and all of the provisions of this Article apply to it. If the services aspect of the transaction predominates and an issue arises about whether the parties reached an agreement, the provisions of this Article dealing with contract formation do not apply. However, this Article's provisions relating solely to the goods, such as those on warranties, do apply.

Reporter's Note

1. *"Bundled" transactions.* Article 2 currently does not specifically address the application of the Article to transactions that cover both goods and non-goods, such as transactions that involve the sale of goods and either the provision of services or the transfer of property other than goods. (These transactions are often referred to as "hybrid," "mixed," or "bundled" transactions.) This has provided courts some flexibility in deciding whether, and to what extent, this Article should be applied to such transactions.

2. *"Predominant purpose" and "gravamen" approaches.* As a general matter, courts have applied Article 2 to such transactions when the goods aspect of the transaction predominates and have declined to apply this Article when the non-goods aspect predominates. Subsection (2) of the revised section adopts this "predominant purpose" approach. (This approach also is proposed in the definition of "chattel paper" in Section 9-102(a)(11)(B).) When, however, an issue relates solely to the goods aspect of the transaction, such as whether the characteristics of the goods conform to the contract, application of Article 2 to that issue is appropriate even if the goods aspect of the transaction does not predominate. This approach, sometimes referred to as the "gravamen" approach, has expressly been applied by some courts and has implicitly been adopted by others. Subsection (3) of the revised section adopts the gravamen approach.

3. The difficulty of capturing the appropriate application of these approaches to bundled transactions in the statutory text should not be underestimated. This application is especially challenging in the context of determining which provisions of the article should be applied to which issues when the non-goods aspects of a transaction predominate. In this connection, the Drafting Committee may wish to consider whether "the provisions of this Article relating solely to the goods apply," used in subsection (3), adequately captures and implements the goal of the gravamen approach. An alternative approach would be to apply only the Article 2 provisions relating to the quality of goods, such as the warranty provisions (Sections 2-312 through 2-318) in such transactions.

4. The Drafting Committee will consider further whether a more flexible approach would be to address these scope issues only in the official comments. It also will consider whether only the warranty provisions might be made applicable when non-goods aspects predominate, suggested in Note 3.

Subsection (2) permits the parties in effect to make their own Statute of Frauds as regards any future modification of the contract by giving effect to a clause in a signed agreement which expressly requires any modification to be by signed writing record. But note that if a consumer is to be held to such a clause on a form supplied by a merchant it must be separately signed.

4. Subsection (4) is intended, despite the provisions of subsections (2) and (3), to prevent contractual provisions excluding modification except by a signed writing record from limiting in other respects the legal effect of the parties' actual later conduct. The effect of such conduct as a waiver is further regulated in subsection (5).

Reporter's Note

In furtherance of medium neutrality, the reference to a signed “writing” now refers to a signed “record.”

* * *

Section 2-316. Exclusion or Modification of Warranties.

* * *

Official Comment

10. As to the use of a record other than a writing and communications that are not written, see Section 2-207, Comment 8. Whether a term is conspicuous, including a term in a record other than a writing, is discussed in Section 1-201, Comment 10.

* * *

Section 2-605. Waiver of Buyer's Objections by Failure to Particularize.

* * *

Official Comment

* * *

5. As to the use of a record other than a writing and communications that are not written, see Section 2-207, Comment 8.

* * *

Section 2-607. Effect of Acceptance; Notice of Breach; Burden of Establishing

1 **Breach After Acceptance; Notice of Claim or Litigation to Person Answerable Over.**

2 * * *

3 **Official Comment**

4
5 * * *

6
7 9. As to the use of a record other than a writing and communications that are not
8 written, see Section 2-207, Comment 8.

9
10 * * *

11
12 **Section 2-609. Right to Adequate Assurance of Performance.**

13 * * *

14 **Official Comment**

15 * * *

16 7. As to the use of a record other than a writing and communications that are not
17 written, see Section 2-207, Comment 8.

18
19 * * *

20 **Section 2-616. Procedure on Notice Claiming Excuse.**

21 * * *

22 **Official Comment**

23 * * *

24 1. * * *

25 2. As to the use of a record other than a writing and communications that are not
26 written, see Section 2-207, Comment 8.

27
28 * * *

29 **Section 2-702. Seller's Remedies on Discovery of Buyer's Insolvency.**

30 * * *

31 **Official Comment**

* * *

4. As to the use of a record other than a writing and communications that are not written, see Section 2-207, Comment 8.

* * *

ARTICLE 2A

LEASES

* * *

Section 2A-102. Scope.

(1) This ~~Except as provided in subsection (3), this~~ Article applies to any transaction, regardless of form, that creates a lease.

(2) If the ~~predominant purpose~~goods aspects of a ~~transaction is to create a hybrid lease~~ predominate, this Article applies to the transaction.

(3) If ~~a transaction includes a~~ the goods aspects of a hybrid lease ~~but the predominant purpose of the transaction is not to create a lease,~~ do not predominate:

(A) the provisions of this Article ~~that~~which relate ~~solely to goods primarily to the goods aspects of the transaction and not to the transaction as a whole~~ apply;

(B) Section 2A-209 applies if the lease is a finance lease; and

(C) Section 2A-407 applies to the promises of a person that is the lessee in a finance lease to the extent the promises are consideration for the right to possession and use of the leased goods.

(4) This Section does not preclude in appropriate circumstances the application of other law to the aspects of a hybrid lease which do not relate to the goods even if the goods aspects of the transaction predominate.

Official Comment

1. This Article applies to any transaction, regardless of form, that creates a lease.

2. If the goods aspects of a hybrid lease predominate, this Article applies to the transaction. If the goods aspects of a hybrid lease do not predominate, subsection (3)(A) applies and the provisions of this Article which relate primarily to the goods aspects of the transaction and not to the transaction as a whole apply.

3. Relevant factors in determining whether the goods aspects of a hybrid lease predominate include the language of the agreement and the portion of the total price that is attributable to the lease of goods, although neither is determinative. An agreed-upon allocation of a portion of the total the price to the goods is ordinarily binding on the parties.

4. A finance lease, defined in Section 2A-103(1)(g), may be included in a hybrid transaction in which the goods aspects of the transaction do not predominate. In such a situation, subsection (3)(B) makes Section 2A-209 applicable to the transaction and subsection (3)(C) addresses the application of Section 2A-407 to the promises made by the lessee under the finance lease. That section applies to those promises that are consideration for the lessee's right to possession and use of the leased goods. Whether a promise of a lessee so qualifies is a question of fact.

Example 1. Lessor and Customer enter into a contract that provides for Lessor to: (i) lease equipment to Customer; and (ii) provide to Customer a variety of maintenance and consulting services. The services aspect of the transaction predominates. Lessor did not select, manufacture, or supply the goods; instead the goods were selected by Customer, and Lessor acquired the goods from Supplier for the sole purpose of leasing the goods to Customer. Assume that the lease aspect of the transaction is a finance lease under Section 2A-103(1)(g). Pursuant to subsection (3)(A), Section 2A-212 applies. Under that section, because the lease aspect of the transaction is a finance lease, Lessor makes no implied warranty of merchantability. Pursuant to subsection (3)(B), Section 2A-209 applies to the transaction. Under that section, all warranties made by Supplier to Lessor extend to Customer.

Example 2. Same facts as Example 1. As consideration for Lessor's obligations under the contract, Customer promises to pay a single monthly fee of a specified amount. The contract does not indicate what portion of the monthly fee is consideration for the services or what portion is consideration for possession and use of the equipment. Section 2A-407 applies to the lessee's promises that are consideration for the lessee's right to possession and use of the equipment. In an action involving the application of Section 2A-407, the determination of what portion of the monthly fee is for the right to possession and use of the equipment is a question of fact.

Section 2A-103. Definitions and Index of Definitions.

(1) In this Article, unless the context otherwise requires:

* * *

(aa) “Hybrid lease” means a single transaction involving a lease [of goods] and a sale, lease, or license of other property or the provision of services.

* * *

Official Comment

* * *

(aa) In some transactions, the transfer of the right to possession and use of goods for a term in return for consideration, (i.e., a lease), is part of a larger transaction. The other aspects of the transaction might involve the provision of services or a transfer of rights to ~~property other than goods. In such a situation because the transaction includes a lease, subsection (3) applies and the provisions of this Article dealing solely with the goods apply. For example, these provisions include those relating to: warranties under Sections 2A-211, 2A-212, 2A-213, 2A-214, 2A-215, 2A-216; risk of loss under Sections 2A-219, 2A-220, 2A-221; acceptance, rejection, and cure under Sections 2A-509, 2A-510, 2A-511, 2A-512, 2A-513; and finance leases, under Section 2-209; 2A-407. See generally the comment to Section 2-102~~ other property. Such a transaction is a hybrid lease. The “other property” in a hybrid transaction could be real property, intellectual property, or even other goods; thus a sale of some goods and a lease of other goods is a hybrid transaction. Section 2A-102 indicates the extent to which this Article applies to a hybrid lease.

Reporter’s Note

~~“Bundled” transactions; “predominant purpose” and “gravamen” approaches. The discussion in-~~ A hybrid lease is a single transaction. If contracting parties enter into separate agreements at the Reporter’s Notes same time, each agreement must be evaluated separately to ~~draft §~~ determine if it is a hybrid lease.

Example 1. Lessor and Customer A enter into a single agreement that provides for Lessor, in return for periodic payments from Customer A, to: (i) lease a photocopier to Customer A for twelve months; (ii) supply all the paper, staples, and toner needed to operate the copier during that period, and (iii) provide routine maintenance and repair services needed to keep the copier operating during that period. The transaction is a hybrid lease because it involves a lease of goods (the copier), a sale of goods (the paper, staples, and toner), and the provision of services.

Example 2-102 generally. Lessor and Customer B enter into three separate written agreements at the same time: (i) a lease of a photocopier to for twelve

1 months; (ii) a contract for Lessor to supply all Customer B with all the paper,
2 staples, and toner needed to operate the copier during that period, and (iii) a
3 contract for Lessor to provide routine maintenance and repair services needed to
4 keep the copier operating during that period. Because the parties executed three
5 separate agreements, and the lease does not involve a sale, lease, or license of
6 other property or the provision of services, the lease is not a hybrid lease.

7
8 Even when contracting parties entered into a single agreement involving both a lease of
9 goods and a sale, lease, or license of other property or the provision of services, the
10 agreement would not involve a single transaction, and hence the transaction would not be a
11 hybrid transaction, if the lease of goods is unrelated to the other aspects of the transaction
12 and the terms of the agreement relating to the lease of goods are readily severable from the
13 terms of the agreement relating to the other aspects of the transaction.

14
15 **Example 3.** Farmer A and Farmer B sign a written agreement pursuant to which
16 Farmer A will lease a tractor to Farmer B for one year and Farmer B will board
17 and feed Farmer A's cattle until the cattle are sold. The agreement specifies a rent
18 for the tractor, which is due monthly, and a mechanism for determining the price
19 for Farmer B's services, which is to be paid when the cattle are sold. The parties
20 would have entered into an agreement to lease the tractor even if they had not
21 entered into an agreement to board and feed the cattle, and vice-versa. The
22 transaction is not a hybrid transaction. Article 2A applies to the lease of the
23 tractor. Other law applies to the agreement to board and feed the cattle.

24
25 * * *

26 (g) "Finance Lease". * * *

27
28 * * *

29
30 Notwithstanding references in this Section and throughout this Article to
31 "writing," "writings," or "written," the use by parties of a record other than a writing may be
32 given effect for purposes of this Article under law other than the [UCC], such as the Electronic
33 Signatures in Global and National Commerce Act, 15 U.S.C. Section 7001 et seq., [as amended],
34 and the Uniform Electronic Transactions Act.

35
36 **Section 2A-107. Waiver or Renunciation of Claim or Right After Default.**

37 * * *

38 **Official Comment**

39 * * *

40
41 4. As to the use of a record other than a writing and communications that are not
42 written, see Section 2A-103, Comment (g).

1 * * *

2
3 **Section 2A-201. Statute of Frauds.**

4 (1) A lease contract is not enforceable by way of action or defense unless:

5 (a) the total payments to be made under the lease contract, excluding payments for
6 options to renew or buy, are less than \$1,000; or

7 (b) there is a ~~writing~~ record, signed by the party against whom enforcement is
8 sought or by that party's authorized agent, sufficient to indicate that a lease contract has been
9 made between the parties and to describe the goods leased and the lease term.

10 (2) Any description of leased goods or of the lease term is sufficient and satisfies
11 subsection (1)(b), whether or not it is specific, if it reasonably identifies what is described.

12 (3) A ~~writing~~ record is not insufficient because it omits or incorrectly states a term agreed
13 upon, but the lease contract is not enforceable under subsection (1)(b) beyond the lease term and
14 the quantity of goods shown in the writing.

15 (4) A lease contract that does not satisfy the requirements of subsection (1), but which is
16 valid in other respects, is enforceable:

17 (a) if the goods are to be specially manufactured or obtained for the lessee and are
18 not suitable for lease or sale to others in the ordinary course of the lessor's business, and the
19 lessor, before notice of repudiation is received and under circumstances that reasonably indicate
20 that the goods are for the lessee, has made either a substantial beginning of their manufacture or
21 commitments for their procurement;

22 (b) if the party against whom enforcement is sought admits in that party's
23 pleading, testimony or otherwise in court that a lease contract was made, but the lease contract is
24 not enforceable under this provision beyond the quantity of goods admitted; or

(c) with respect to goods that have been received and accepted by the lessee.

(5) The lease term under a lease contract referred to in subsection (4) is:

(a) if there is a writing record signed by the party against whom enforcement is sought or by that party's authorized agent specifying the lease term, the term so specified;

(b) if the party against whom enforcement is sought admits in that party's pleading, testimony, or otherwise in court a lease term, the term so admitted; or

(c) a reasonable lease term.

Official Comment

* * *

Changes: This section is modeled on Section 2-201, with changes to reflect the differences between a lease contract and a contract for the sale of goods. In particular, subsection (1)(b) adds a requirement that the writing record “describe the goods leased and the lease term”, borrowing that concept, with revisions, from the provisions of Section 9-203(1)(a). Subsection (2), relying on the statutory analogue in Section 9-110, sets forth the minimum criterion for satisfying that requirement.

Reporter's Note

In furtherance of medium neutrality, the reference to a signed “writing” now refers to a signed “record.”

* * *

Section 2A-202. Final Written Expression: Parol or Extrinsic Evidence.

Terms with respect to which the confirmatory memoranda of the parties agree or which are otherwise set forth in a writing record intended by the parties as a final expression of their agreement with respect to such terms as are included therein may not be contradicted by evidence of any prior agreement or of a contemporaneous oral agreement but may be explained or supplemented:

(a) by course of dealing or usage of trade or by course of performance;

1 and

2 (b) by evidence of consistent additional terms unless the court finds the ~~writing~~ record to
3 have been intended also as a complete and exclusive statement of the terms of the agreement.

4 **Reporter's Note**

5 In furtherance of medium neutrality, the reference to a "writing" now refers to a "record."
6
7

8 * * *

9 **Section 2A-203. Seals Inoperative.**

10 The affixing of a seal to a ~~writing~~ record evidencing a lease contract or an offer to enter
11 into a lease contract does not render the ~~writing~~ record a sealed instrument and the law with
12 respect to sealed instruments does not apply to the lease contract or offer.

13 **Reporter's Note**

14 In furtherance of medium neutrality, the reference to a "writing" now refers to a "record."
15
16

17 * * *

18 **Section 2A-205. Firm Offers.**

19 An offer by a merchant to lease goods to or from another person in a signed ~~writing~~
20 record that by its terms gives assurance it will be held open is not revocable, for lack of
21 consideration, during the time stated or, if no time is stated, for a reasonable time, but in no event
22 may the period of irrevocability exceed 3 months. Any such term of assurance on a form
23 supplied by the offeree must be separately signed by the offeror.

24 **Reporter's Note**

25 In furtherance of medium neutrality, the reference to a signed "writing" now refers to a
26 signed "record."
27
28

29 * * *

1 **Section 2A-208. Modification, Rescission and Waiver.**

2 (1) An agreement modifying a lease contract needs no consideration to be binding.

3 (2) A signed lease agreement that excludes modification or rescission except by a signed
4 writing record may not be otherwise modified or rescinded, but, except as between merchants,
5 such a requirement on a form supplied by a merchant must be separately signed by the other
6 party.

7 **Reporter's Note**

8
9 In furtherance of medium neutrality, the reference to a signed "writing" now refers to a
10 signed "record."

11 * * *

12
13 **Section 2A-214. Exclusion or Modification of Warranties.**

14 * * *

15 **Official Comment**

16 * * *

17
18 As to the use of a record other than a writing and communications that are not written,
19 see Section 2A-103, Comment (g). Whether a term is conspicuous, including a term in a record
20 other than a writing, is discussed in Section 1-201, Comment 10.

21 * * *

22
23 **Section 2A-303. Alienability of Party's Interest Under Lease Contract or of**
24 **Lessor's Residual Interest in Goods; Delegation of Performance; Transfer of Rights.**

25 * * *

26 **Official Comment**

27 * * *

28
29 10. As to the use of a record other than a writing and communications that are not
30 written, see Section 2A-103, Comment (g).

* * *

Section 2A-309. Lessor's and Lessee's Rights When Goods Become Fixtures.

* * *

Official Comment

* * *

7. As to the use of a record other than a writing and communications that are not written, see Section 2A-103, Comment (g).

* * *

Section 2A-310. Lessor's and Lessee's Rights When Goods Become Accessions.

* * *

Official Comment

* * *

As to the use of a record other than a writing and communications that are not written, see Section 2A-103, Comment (g).

* * *

Section 2A-401. Insecurity: Adequate Assurance of Performance.

* * *

Official Comment

* * *

As to the use of a record other than a writing and communications that are not written, see Section 2A-103, Comment (g).

* * *

Section 2A-406. Procedure on Excused Performance.

* * *

Official Comment

1 * * *

2 As to the use of a record other than a writing and communications that are not written,
3 see Section 2A-103, Comment (g).

4
5 * * *

6 **Section 2A-514. Waiver of Lessee's Objections.**

7 * * *

8 **Official Comment**

9 * * *

10 As to the use of a record other than a writing and communications that are not written,
11 see Section 2A-103, Comment (g).

12
13 * * *

14 **Section 2A-516. Effect of Acceptance of Goods; Notice of Default; Burden of**
15 **Establishing Default After Acceptance; Notice of Claim or Litigation to Person**
16 **Answerable Over.**

17 * * *

18 **Official Comment**

19 * * *

20 As to the use of a record other than a writing and communications that are not written,
21 see Section 2A-103, Comment (g).

22
23 * * *

24
25 **Reporter's Prefatory Note to Payments Amendments**

26 The changes relating to payments address both statutory text and official comments and
27 concern the following five topics:

28
29 *Negotiability.* An amendment to § 3-104 specifies that negotiability is not negated by the
30 inclusion of either a choice-of-law term or a choice-of-forum term in an instrument.

Remote Deposit Capture. Amendments to §§ 3-105 and 3-604, and to the official comments to §§ 3-309 and 4-207, clarify that an instrument is “issued,” if a drawer sends an image of and information describing an item, but never delivers the item.

Scope of Article 4A – Definition of Payment Order. An amendment to the official comment to § 4A-104 (which includes the comments to § 4A-103) clarifies when an instruction sent pursuant to a so-called “smart contract” constitutes a payment order.

References to a “Writing.” Amendments to §§ 4A-202, 4A-203, 4A-207, 4A-208 and 4A-305 change the references to a “writing” to an “authenticated record.”

Security Procedures. Amendments to §§ 4A-201 and 4A-202, and to the official comment to § 4A-203, clarify that: (i) a security procedure may impose obligations on the receiving bank, the customer, or both; (ii) a security procedure may require the use of symbols, sounds, or biometrics; and (iii) a requirement that a payment order be sent from a known email address, IP address, or phone number is not by itself a security procedure.

ARTICLE 3

NEGOTIABLE INSTRUMENTS

Section 3-104. Negotiable Instrument.

(a) Except as provided in subsections (c) and (d), “negotiable instrument” means an unconditional promise or order to pay a fixed amount of money, with or without interest or other charges described in the promise or order, if it:

(1) is payable to bearer or to order at the time it is issued or first comes into possession of a holder;

(2) is payable on demand or at a definite time; and

(3) does not state any other undertaking or instruction by the person promising or ordering payment to do any act in addition to the payment of money, but the promise or order may contain (i) an undertaking or power to give, maintain, or protect collateral to secure payment, (ii) an authorization or power to the holder to confess judgment or realize on or dispose of collateral, ~~or~~ (iii) a waiver of the benefit of any law intended for the advantage or protection of

an obligor; (iv) a term that specifies the law that governs the promise or order; or (v) an undertaking to resolve in a specified forum a dispute concerning the promise or order.

Official Comment

1. The definition of “negotiable instrument” defines the scope of Article 3 since Section 3-102 states: “This Article applies to negotiable instruments.” The definition in Section 3-104(a) incorporates other definitions in Article 3. An instrument is either a “promise,” defined in Section 3-103(a)(12), or “order,” defined in Section 3-103(a)(8). A promise is a written undertaking to pay money signed by the person undertaking to pay. An order is a written instruction to pay money signed by the person giving the instruction. Thus, the term “negotiable instrument” is limited to a signed writing that orders or promises payment of money. “Money” is defined in Section 1-201(24) and is not limited to United States dollars. It also includes a medium of exchange established by a foreign government or monetary units of account established by an intergovernmental organization or by agreement between two or more nations. Five other requirements are stated in Section 3-104(a): First, the promise or order must be “unconditional.” The quoted term is explained in Section 3-106. Second, the amount of money must be “a fixed amount . . . with or without interest or other charges described in the promise or order.” Section 3-112(b) relates to “interest.” Third, the promise or order must be “payable to bearer or to order.” The quoted phrase is explained in Section 3-109. An exception to this requirement is stated in subsection (c). Fourth, the promise or order must be payable “on demand or at a definite time.” The quoted phrase is explained in Section 3-108. Fifth, the promise or order may not state “any other undertaking or instruction by the person promising or ordering payment to do any act in addition to the payment of money” with ~~three~~ five exceptions. The quoted phrase is based on the first sentence of N.I.L. Section 5 which is the precursor of “no other promise, order, obligation or power given by the maker or drawer” appearing in former Section 3-104(1)(b). The words “instruction” and “undertaking” are used instead of “order” and “promise” that are used in the N.I.L. formulation because the latter words are defined terms that include only orders or promises to pay money. The first three exceptions stated in Section 3-104(a)(3) are based on and are intended to have the same meaning as former Section 3-112(1)(b), (c), (d), and (e), as well as N.I.L. § 5(1), (2), and (3). The final two exceptions stated in Section 3-104(a)(3) deal with choice-of-law and choice-of forum clauses. The latter of these includes an agreement to arbitrate. Subsection (b) states that “instrument” means a “negotiable instrument.” This follows former Section 3-102(1)(e) which treated the two terms as synonymous.

* * *

Section 3-105. Issue of Instrument.

(a) “Issue” means:

(1) the first delivery of an instrument by the maker or drawer, whether to a holder or nonholder, for the purpose of giving rights on the instrument to any person; or

(2) if agreed by the payee, first transmission by the drawer to the payee of an image of an item and information derived from the item [in a manner] that enables the depository bank to collect the item by transferring or presenting under federal law an electronic check.

(b) An unissued instrument, or an unissued incomplete instrument that is completed, is binding on the maker or drawer, but nonissuance is a defense. An instrument that is conditionally issued or is issued for a special purpose is binding on the maker or drawer, but failure of the condition or special purpose to be fulfilled is a defense.

(c) “Issuer” applies to issued and unissued instruments and means a maker or drawer of an instrument.

Official Comment

1. Under former Section 3-102(1)(a) “issue” was defined as the first delivery to a “holder or a remitter” but the term “remitter” was neither defined nor otherwise used. In revised Article 3, Section 3-105(a) defines “issue” more broadly to include the first delivery to anyone by the drawer or maker for the purpose of giving rights to anyone on the instrument. “Delivery” with respect to instruments is defined in ~~Section 1-201(14)~~ Section 1-201(b)(15) as meaning “voluntary transfer of possession.”

Subsection (a) permits an instrument to be issued by an electronic transmission of an image of and information derived from the instrument by maker and drawer, rather than by delivery. Thus, for example, a drawer might, with the permission of the payee, write and sign a check, take a photograph of the check, send the photograph to the drawee for processing electronically, and destroy the original check. If the electronic image and the information derived from it can be processed as an “electronic check” under Regulation CC, see 12 C.F.R. § 229.2(ggg), the check is “issued” and hence can be enforced pursuant to this Article.

* * *

Reporter's Note

The reference in subsection (a)(2) to transmission of an image of an item and information derived from the item is derived from Section 4-110(a), dealing with electronic presentment.

* * *

Section 3-309. Enforcement of Lost, Destroyed, or Stolen Instrument.

* * *

Official Comment

* * *

4. The destruction of a check in connection with a truncation process in which information is extracted from the check and an image of the check is made, and then such information and image are transmitted for payment does not, by itself, prevent application of this section. See Section 3-604 comment 1.

Example: The payee of a check creates an image of the check, destroys the check, and transmits the image and information derived from the check for payment. Due to an error in transmission, the depository bank never receives the transmission. The payee may be able to enforce the check if the payee can prove the terms of the check and otherwise satisfy the requirements of this section. The result would be different if there were no error in the transmission and the payor discharged its obligation on the check.

* * *

Section 3-604. Discharge by Cancellation or Renunciation.

(a) A person entitled to enforce an instrument, with or without consideration, may discharge the obligation of a party to pay the instrument (i) by an intentional voluntary act, such as surrender of the instrument to the party, destruction, mutilation, or cancellation of the instrument, cancellation or striking out of the party's signature, or the addition of words to the instrument indicating discharge, or (ii) by agreeing not to sue or otherwise renouncing rights against the party by a signed record. The obligation of a party to pay a check is not discharged solely by the destruction of the check in connection with a process in which, ~~initially,~~ information is extracted from the check and an image of the check is made and, subsequently, the information and image are transmitted for payment.

(b) Cancellation or striking out of an indorsement pursuant to subsection (a) does not affect the status and rights of a party derived from the indorsement.

(e) In this section, “signed,” with respect to a record that is not a writing, includes the attachment to or logical association with the record of an electronic symbol, sound, or process with the present intent to adopt or accept the record.

Official Comment

Section 3–604 replaces former Section 3–605.

1. The destruction of a check in connection with a truncation process in which information is extracted from the check and an image of the check is made, and then such information and image are transmitted for payment is not within the scope of this section and does not by itself discharge the obligation of a party to pay the instrument. The destruction of the check also does not affect whether the check has been issued. See Section 3-105(a) and comment 1.

Reporter's Note

Deletion of subsection (c). Subsection (c) has been deleted as unnecessary in view of the revised definition of “signed” in Section 1-201.

* * *

ARTICLE 4

BANK DEPOSITS AND COLLECTIONS

* * *

Section 4-207. Transfer Warranties.

* * *

Official Comment

1. Except for subsection (b), this section conforms to Section 3-416 and extends its coverage to items. The substance of this section is discussed in the Comment to Section 3-416. Subsection (b) provides that customers or collecting banks that transfer items, whether by indorsement or not, undertake to pay the item if the item is dishonored. This obligation cannot be disclaimed by a “without recourse” indorsement or otherwise. With respect to checks, Regulation CC Section 229.34 states the warranties made by paying and returning banks.

2. For an explanation of subsection (a)(6), see comment 8 to Section 3-416.

3. The warranties provided for in this Section and in Sections 4-208 and 4-209 are supplemented by warranties created under federal law. For example, under Section 4-209(b), a person who undertakes to retain an item in connection with an agreement for electronic presentment makes a warranty that retention and presentment comply with the agreement. Under federal law, a person might also make a warranty that [no][a] person will [not] be asked to make payment based on a check already paid. See 12 C.F.R. § 229.34(a).

* * *

ARTICLE 4A

FUNDS TRANSFERS

Section 4A-103. Payment Order – Definitions.

(a) In this Article:

(1) “Payment order” means an instruction of a sender to a receiving bank, transmitted orally, ~~electronically, or in writing~~ or in a record, to pay, or to cause another bank to pay, a fixed or determinable amount of money to a beneficiary if:

(i) the instruction does not state a condition to payment to the beneficiary other than time of payment,

(ii) the receiving bank is to be reimbursed by debiting an account of, or otherwise receiving payment from, the sender, and

(iii) the instruction is transmitted by the sender directly to the receiving bank or to an agent, funds-transfer system, or communication system for transmittal to the receiving bank.

* * *

Official Comment

This section is discussed in the Comment following Section 4A-104.

Section 4A-104. Funds Transfer – Definitions.

* * *

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46

Official Comment

* * *

3. Further limitations on the scope of Article 4A are found in the three requirements found in subparagraphs (i), (ii), and (iii) of Section 4A-103(a)(1). Subparagraph (i) states that the instruction to pay is a payment order only if it “does not state a condition to payment to the beneficiary other than time of payment.” An instruction to pay a beneficiary sometimes is subject to a requirement that the beneficiary perform some act such as delivery of documents.

~~For example,~~ **Example:** a New York bank may have issued a letter of credit in favor of X, a California seller of goods to be shipped to the New York bank’s customer in New York. The terms of the letter of credit provide for payment to X if documents are presented to prove shipment of the goods. Instead of providing for presentment of the documents to the New York bank, the letter of credit states that they may be presented to a California bank that acts as an agent for payment. The New York bank sends an instruction to the California bank to pay X upon presentation of the required documents. The instruction is not covered by Article 4A because payment to the beneficiary is conditional upon receipt of shipping documents. The function of banks in a funds transfer under Article 4A is comparable to the role of banks in the collection and payment of checks in that it is essentially mechanical in nature. The low price and high speed that characterize funds transfers reflect this fact. Conditions to payment by the California bank other than time of payment impose responsibilities on that bank that go beyond those in Article 4A funds transfers. Although the payment by the New York bank to X under the letter of credit is not covered by Article 4A, if X is paid by the California bank, payment of the obligation of the New York bank to reimburse the California bank could be made by an Article 4A funds transfer. In such a case there is a distinction between the payment by the New York bank to X under the letter of credit and the payment by the New York bank to the California bank. For example, if the New York bank pays its reimbursement obligation to the California bank by a Fedwire naming the California bank as beneficiary (see Comment 1 to Section 4A-107), payment is made to the California bank rather than to X. That payment is governed by Article 4A and it could be made either before or after payment by the California bank to X. The payment by the New York bank to X under the letter of credit is not governed by Article 4A and it occurs when the California bank, as agent of the New York bank, pays X. No payment order was involved in that transaction. In this example, if the New York bank had erroneously sent an instruction to the California bank unconditionally instructing payment to X, the instruction would have been an Article 4A payment order. If the payment order was accepted (Section 4A-209(b)) by the California bank, a payment by the New York bank to X would have resulted (Section 4A-406(a)). But Article 4A would not prevent recovery of funds from X on the basis that X was not entitled to retain the funds under the law of mistake and restitution, letter of credit law or other applicable law.

An instruction to pay might be a component of a computer program or a transaction protocol intended to execute automatically under specified circumstances. The fact that the program or protocol itself is subject to a condition does not necessarily mean that an instruction

1 to pay issued pursuant to that program or protocol “state[s] a condition to payment of the
2 beneficiary” within the meaning of Section 4A-103(a)(1)(i). Whether the instruction does state
3 such a condition depends on what the instruction says when it is received by the receiving bank.
4 An instruction that neither grants discretion nor imposes a limitation on payment by the receiving
5 bank does not state a condition to payment. What distinguishes the prior example is that the New
6 York bank’s instruction to the California bank did state a condition when the California bank
7 received it.

8
9 Similarly, an instruction that is subject to a condition when received by Bank A, and
10 which therefore does not constitute a payment order, does not become a payment order when the
11 condition is satisfied. However, if, after the condition is satisfied, Bank A sends the instruction to
12 Bank B without the stated condition, that second instruction could be a payment order if the
13 instruction otherwise complies with Section 4A-103(a).

14
15 * * *

16 **Section 4A-201. Security Procedure.** “Security procedure” means a procedure
17 established by agreement of a customer and a receiving bank for the purpose of (i) verifying that
18 a payment order or communication amending or cancelling a payment order is that of the
19 customer, or (ii) detecting error in the transmission or the content of the payment order or
20 communication. A security procedure may impose an obligation on the receiving bank or the
21 customer and may require the use of algorithms or other codes, identifying words, ~~or~~ numbers,
22 symbols, sounds or biometrics, encryption, callback procedures, or similar security devices.
23 Comparison of a signature on a payment order or communication with an authorized specimen
24 signature of the customer or requiring that a payment order be sent from a known email address,
25 IP address or phone number is not by itself a security procedure.

26 **Official Comment**

27
28 A large percentage of payment orders and communications amending or cancelling
29 payment orders are transmitted electronically and it is standard practice to use security
30 procedures that are designed to assure the authenticity of the message through steps designed to
31 assure the identity of the sender, the integrity of the message, or both. Security procedures can
32 also be used to detect error in the content of messages or to detect payment orders that are
33 transmitted by mistake as in the case of multiple transmission of the same payment order.
34 Security procedures might also apply to communications that are transmitted by telephone or in
35 ~~writing~~ a record. Section 4A-201 defines these security procedures. The second sentence of the

1 definition provides several examples of a security procedure, but this list is not exhaustive. The
2 inclusion of the phrase “or similar security devices” means that, as new technologies emerge,
3 what can be a security procedure will change. The definition of security procedure limits the
4 term to a procedure “established by agreement of a customer and a receiving bank.” The term
5 does not apply to procedures that the receiving bank may follow unilaterally in processing
6 payment orders. The question of whether loss that may result from the transmission of a spurious
7 or erroneous payment order will be borne by the receiving bank or the sender or purported sender
8 is affected by whether a security procedure was or was not in effect and whether there was or
9 was not compliance with the procedure. Security procedures are referred to in Sections 4A-202
10 and 4A-203, which deal with authorized and verified payment orders, and Section 4A-205,
11 which deals with erroneous payment orders.
12

13 Requiring that a payment order be sent from a known email, IP address or phone number
14 is not by itself a “security procedure” within the meaning of this section because it is possible to
15 make a payment order with a different origin appear to have been sent from such an address or
16 phone number. However, requiring that a payment order have such an apparent origin in
17 combination with other security protocols might be a security procedure.
18

19 **Section 4A-202. Authorized and Verified Payment Orders.**

20 (a) A payment order received by the receiving bank is the authorized order of the person
21 identified as sender if that person authorized the order or is otherwise bound by it under the law
22 of agency.

23 (b) If a bank and its customer have agreed that the authenticity of payment orders issued
24 to the bank in the name of the customer as sender will be verified pursuant to a security
25 procedure, a payment order received by the receiving bank is effective as the order of the
26 customer, whether or not authorized, if (i) the security procedure is a commercially reasonable
27 method of providing security against unauthorized payment orders, and (ii) the bank proves that
28 it accepted the payment order in good faith and in compliance with the bank’s obligations under
29 the security procedure and any written agreement or instruction of the customer, evidenced by a
30 record, restricting acceptance of payment orders issued in the name of the customer. The bank is
31 not required to follow an instruction that violates ~~a written~~ an agreement evidenced by a record

1 with the customer or notice of which is not received at a time and in a manner affording the bank
2 a reasonable opportunity to act on it before the payment order is accepted.

3 (c) Commercial reasonableness of a security procedure is a question of law to be
4 determined by considering the wishes of the customer expressed to the bank, the circumstances
5 of the customer known to the bank, including the size, type, and frequency of payment orders
6 normally issued by the customer to the bank, alternative security procedures offered to the
7 customer, and security procedures in general use by customers and receiving banks similarly
8 situated. A security procedure is deemed to be commercially reasonable if (i) the security
9 procedure was chosen by the customer after the bank offered, and the customer refused, a
10 security procedure that was commercially reasonable for that customer, and (ii) the customer
11 expressly agreed in ~~writing~~ a record to be bound by any payment order, whether or not
12 authorized, issued in its name and accepted by the bank in compliance with the bank's
13 obligations under the security procedure chosen by the customer.

14 * * *

15 Official Comment

16 This section is discussed in the Comment following Section 4A-203.

17 Section 4A-203. Unenforceability of Certain Verified Payment Orders.

18 (a) If an accepted payment order is not, under Section 4A-202(a), an authorized order of a
19 customer identified as sender, but is effective as an order of the customer pursuant to Section
20 4A-202(b), the following rules apply:

21 (1) By express ~~written~~ agreement evidenced by a record, the receiving bank may
22 limit the extent to which it is entitled to enforce or retain payment of the payment order.

(2) The receiving bank is not entitled to enforce or retain payment of the payment order if the customer proves that the order was not caused, directly or indirectly, by a person (i) entrusted at any time with duties to act for the customer with respect to payment orders or the security procedure, or (ii) who obtained access to transmitting facilities of the customer or who obtained, from a source controlled by the customer and without authority of the receiving bank, information facilitating breach of the security procedure, regardless of how the information was obtained or whether the customer was at fault. Information includes any access device, computer software, or the like.

(b) This section applies to amendments of payment orders to the same extent it applies to payment orders.

Official Comment

* * *

3. Subsection (b) of Section 4A-202 is based on the assumption that losses due to fraudulent payment orders can best be avoided by the use of commercially reasonable security procedures, and that the use of such procedures should be encouraged. The subsection is designed to protect both the customer and the receiving bank. A receiving bank needs to be able to rely on objective criteria to determine whether it can safely act on a payment order. Employees of the bank can be trained to “test” a payment order according to the various steps specified in the security procedure. The bank is responsible for the acts of these employees. Subsection (b)(ii) requires the bank to prove that it accepted the payment order in good faith and “in compliance with the bank’s obligations under the security procedure.” If the fraud was not detected because the bank’s employee did not perform the acts required by the security procedure, the bank has not complied. Subsection (b)(ii) also requires the bank to prove that it complied with any agreement or instruction that restricts acceptance of payment orders issued in the name of the customer. If an agreement establishing a security procedure places obligations on both the sender and the receiving bank, the receiving bank need prove only that it complied with the obligations placed on the receiving bank. A customer may want to protect itself by imposing limitations on acceptance of payment orders by the bank. For example, the customer may prohibit the bank from accepting a payment order that is not payable from an authorized account, that exceeds the credit balance in specified accounts of the customer, or that exceeds some other amount. Another limitation may relate to the beneficiary. The customer may provide the bank with a list of authorized beneficiaries and prohibit acceptance of any payment order to a beneficiary not appearing on the list. Such limitations may be incorporated into the security procedure itself or they may be covered by a separate agreement or instruction. In either case, the

1 bank must comply with the limitations if the conditions stated in subsection (b) are met.
2 Normally limitations on acceptance would be incorporated into an agreement between the
3 customer and the receiving bank, but in some cases the instruction might be unilaterally given by
4 the customer. If standing instructions or an agreement state limitations on the ability of the
5 receiving bank to act, provision must be made for later modification of the limitations. Normally
6 this would be done by an agreement that specifies particular procedures to be followed. . Thus,
7 subsection (b) states that the receiving bank is not required to follow an instruction that violates a
8 ~~written~~ an agreement evidenced by a record. The receiving bank is not bound by an instruction
9 unless it has adequate notice of it. Subsections (25), (26), and (27) of Section 1-201 apply.

10
11 Subsection (b)(i) assures that the interests of the customer will be protected by providing
12 an incentive to a bank to make available to the customer a security procedure that is
13 commercially reasonable. If a commercially reasonable security procedure is not made available
14 to the customer, subsection (b) does not apply. The result is that subsection (a) applies and the
15 bank acts at its peril in accepting a payment order that may be unauthorized. Prudent banking
16 practice may require that security procedures be utilized in virtually all cases except for those in
17 which personal contact between the customer and the bank eliminates the possibility of an
18 unauthorized order. The burden of making available commercially reasonable security
19 procedures is imposed on receiving banks because they generally determine what security
20 procedures can be used and are in the best position to evaluate the efficacy of procedures offered
21 to customers to combat fraud. The burden on the customer is to supervise its employees to assure
22 compliance with the security procedure and to safeguard confidential security information and
23 access to transmitting facilities so that the security procedure cannot be breached.

24
25 4. The principal issue that is likely to arise in litigation involving subsection (b) is
26 whether the security procedure in effect when a fraudulent payment order was accepted was
27 commercially reasonable. In considering this issue, a court will need to consider the totality of
28 the security procedure, including each party's obligations under the procedure. The concept of
29 what is commercially reasonable in a given case is flexible. Verification entails labor and
30 equipment costs that can vary greatly depending upon the degree of security that is sought. A
31 customer that transmits very large numbers of payment orders in very large amounts may desire
32 and may reasonably expect to be provided with state-of-the-art procedures that provide
33 maximum security. But the expense involved may make use of a state-of-the-art procedure
34 infeasible for a customer that normally transmits payment orders infrequently or in relatively low
35 amounts. Another variable is the type of receiving bank. It is reasonable to require large money
36 center banks to make available state-of-the-art security procedures. On the other hand, the same
37 requirement may not be reasonable for a small country bank. A receiving bank might have
38 several security procedures that are designed to meet the varying needs of different customers.
39 The type of payment order is another variable. For example, in a wholesale wire transfer, each
40 payment order is normally transmitted electronically and individually. A testing procedure will
41 be individually applied to each payment order. In funds transfers to be made by means of an
42 automated clearing house many payment orders are incorporated into an electronic device such
43 as a magnetic tape that is physically delivered. Testing of the individual payment orders is not
44 feasible. Thus, a different kind of security procedure must be adopted to take into account the
45 different mode of transmission.

1 The issue of whether a particular security procedure is commercially reasonable is a
2 question of law. Whether the receiving bank complied with the procedure is a question of fact. It
3 is appropriate to make the finding concerning commercial reasonability a matter of law because
4 security procedures are likely to be standardized in the banking industry and a question of law
5 standard leads to more predictability concerning the level of security that a bank must offer to its
6 customers. The purpose of subsection (b) is to encourage banks to institute reasonable safeguards
7 against fraud but not to make them insurers against fraud. A security procedure is not
8 commercially unreasonable simply because another procedure might have been better or because
9 the judge deciding the question would have opted for a more stringent procedure. For example,
10 the use of a computer program to detect fraud is not commercially unreasonable merely because
11 it does not detect all fraud or because another system or approach might be more successful at
12 detecting fraud. The standard is not whether the security procedure is the best available. Rather it
13 is whether the procedure is reasonable for the particular customer and the particular bank, which
14 is a lower standard. What is reasonable for a particular customer requires the court to consider
15 the circumstances of the customer known to the bank, including the size, type, and frequency of
16 payment orders normally issued by the customer to the bank. Article 4A does not create an
17 affirmative obligation on the receiving bank to obtain information about its customer. However,
18 whatever knowledge the bank does have about the customer is relevant in determining the
19 commercial reasonableness of the security procedure. ~~On the other hand, a~~ A security procedure
20 that fails to meet prevailing standards of good banking practice applicable to the particular bank
21 and customer should not be held to be commercially reasonable. Subsection (c) states factors to
22 be considered by the judge in making the determination of commercial reasonableness. The
23 reasonableness of a security procedure is to be determined at the time that a payment order is
24 processed, not at the time the customer and the bank agree to the security procedure.
25 Accordingly, a security procedure that was reasonable when agreed to might become
26 unreasonable as technologies emerge, prevailing practices change, or the bank acquires
27 knowledge about the customer. Sometimes an informed customer refuses a security procedure
28 that is commercially reasonable and suitable for that customer and insists on using a higher-risk
29 procedure because it is more convenient or cheaper. In that case, under the last sentence of
30 subsection (c), the customer has voluntarily assumed the risk of failure of the procedure and
31 cannot shift the loss to the bank. But this result follows only if the customer expressly agrees in
32 ~~writing~~ a record to assume that risk. It is implicit in the last sentence of subsection (c) that a bank
33 that accedes to the wishes of its customer in this regard is not acting in bad faith by so doing so
34 long as the customer is made aware of the risk. In all cases, however, a receiving bank cannot get
35 the benefit of subsection (b) unless it has made available to the customer a security procedure
36 that is commercially reasonable and suitable for use by that customer. In most cases, the mutual
37 interest of bank and customer to protect against fraud should lead to agreement to a security
38 procedure which is commercially reasonable.

39
40 5. Subsection (b) generally allows a receiving bank to treat a payment order as authorized
41 by the customer if the bank accepts the payment order in good faith and in compliance with the
42 bank's obligations under a commercially reasonable, agreed-upon security procedure. For this
43 purpose, "good faith" requires the exercise of reasonable commercial standards of fair dealing,
44 see § 4A-105(a)(6), not the absence of negligence. Consequently, the bank has no duty, beyond
45 that to which the bank has agreed, to investigate suspicious activity or to advise its customer of
46 such activity. However, a bank that obtains knowledge that a customer's operations have been

1 infiltrated or knowledge that the customer is the victim of identity fraud might not be acting in
2 good faith if the bank, without receiving some assurance from the customer that the issue has
3 been remediated, thereafter accepts a payment order.
4

5 ~~5~~.6. The effect of Section 4A-202(b) is to place the risk of loss on the customer if an
6 unauthorized payment order is accepted by the receiving bank after verification by the bank in
7 compliance with a commercially reasonable security procedure. An exception to this result is
8 provided by Section 4A-203(a)(2). The customer may avoid the loss resulting from such a
9 payment order if the customer can prove that the fraud was not committed by a person described
10 in that subsection. Breach of a commercially reasonable security procedure requires that the
11 person committing the fraud have knowledge of how the procedure works and knowledge of
12 codes, identifying devices, and the like. That person may also need access to transmitting
13 facilities through an access device or other software in order to breach the security procedure.
14 This confidential information must be obtained either from a source controlled by the customer
15 or from a source controlled by the receiving bank. If the customer can prove that the person
16 committing the fraud did not obtain the confidential information from an agent or former agent
17 of the customer or from a source controlled by the customer, the loss is shifted to the bank.
18 “Prove” is defined in Section 4A-105(a)(7). Because of bank regulation requirements, in this
19 kind of case there will always be a criminal investigation as well as an internal investigation of
20 the bank to determine the probable explanation for the breach of security. Because a funds
21 transfer fraud usually will involve a very large amount of money, both the criminal investigation
22 and the internal investigation are likely to be thorough. In some cases, there may be an
23 investigation by bank examiners as well. Frequently, these investigations will develop evidence
24 of who is at fault and the cause of the loss. The customer will have access to evidence developed
25 in these investigations and that evidence can be used by the customer in meeting its burden of
26 proof.
27

28 ~~6~~.7. The effect of Section 4A-202(b) may also be changed by an agreement meeting the
29 requirements of Section 4A-203(a)(1). Some customers may be unwilling to take all or part of
30 the risk of loss with respect to unauthorized payment orders even if all of the requirements of
31 Section 4A-202(b) are met. By virtue of Section 4A-203(a)(1), a receiving bank may assume all
32 of the risk of loss with respect to unauthorized payment orders or the customer and bank may
33 agree that losses from unauthorized payment orders are to be divided as provided in the
34 agreement.
35

36 ~~7~~.8. In a large majority of cases the sender of a payment order is a bank. In many cases in
37 which there is a bank sender, both the sender and the receiving bank will be members of a funds
38 transfer system over which the payment order is transmitted. Since Section 4A-202(f) does not
39 prohibit a funds transfer system rule from varying rights and obligations under Section 4A-202, a
40 rule of the funds transfer system can determine how loss due to an unauthorized payment order
41 from a participating bank to another participating bank is to be allocated. A funds transfer system
42 rule, however, cannot change the rights of a customer that is not a participating bank. § 4A-
43 501(b). Section 4A-202(f) also prevents variation by agreement except to the extent stated.
44

45 * * *
46

Section 4A-206. Transmission of Payment Order Through Funds-Transfer or Other Communication System.

* * *

Official Comment

1. A payment order may be issued to a receiving bank directly by delivery of a ~~writing or electronic device record~~ or by an oral or ~~electronic~~ communication. If an agent of the sender is employed to transmit orders on behalf of the sender, the sender is bound by the order transmitted by the agent on the basis of agency law. Section 4A-206 is an application of that principle to cases in which a funds transfer or communication system acts as an intermediary in transmitting the sender's order to the receiving bank. The intermediary is deemed to be an agent of the sender for the purpose of transmitting payment orders and related messages for the sender. Section 4A-206 deals with error by the intermediary.

* * *

Section 4A-207. Misdescription of Beneficiary.

* * *

(c) If (i) a payment order described in subsection (b) is accepted, (ii) the originator's payment order described the beneficiary inconsistently by name and number, and (iii) the beneficiary's bank pays the person identified by number as permitted by subsection (b)(1), the following rules apply:

(1) If the originator is a bank, the originator is obliged to pay its order.

(2) If the originator is not a bank and proves that the person identified by number was not entitled to receive payment from the originator, the originator is not obliged to pay its order unless the originator's bank proves that the originator, before acceptance of the originator's order, had notice that payment of a payment order issued by the originator might be made by the beneficiary's bank on the basis of an identifying or bank account number even if it identifies a person different from the named beneficiary. Proof of notice may be made by any admissible evidence. The originator's bank satisfies the burden of proof if it proves that the originator,

1 before the payment order was accepted, signed a ~~writing~~ record stating the information to which
2 the notice relates.

3 * * *

4 ~~(e) In this section, “signed”, with respect to a record that is not a writing, includes the~~
5 ~~attachment to or logical association with the record of an electronic symbol, sound, or process~~
6 ~~with the present intent to adopt or accept the record.~~

7 * * *

8 **Section 4A-208. Misdescription of Intermediary Bank or Beneficiary’s Bank.**

9 * * *

10 (b) This subsection applies to a payment order identifying an intermediary bank or the
11 beneficiary’s bank both by name and an identifying number if the name and number identify
12 different persons.

13 (1) If the sender is a bank, the receiving bank may rely on the number as the
14 proper identification of the intermediary or beneficiary’s bank if the receiving bank, when it
15 executes the sender’s order, does not know that the name and number identify different persons.
16 The receiving bank need not determine whether the name and number refer to the same person or
17 whether the number refers to a bank. The sender is obliged to compensate the receiving bank for
18 any loss and expenses incurred by the receiving bank as a result of its reliance on the number in
19 executing or attempting to execute the order.

20 (2) If the sender is not a bank and the receiving bank proves that the sender,
21 before the payment order was accepted, had notice that the receiving bank might rely on the
22 number as the proper identification of the intermediary or beneficiary’s bank even if it identifies
23 a person different from the bank identified by name, the rights and obligations of the sender and

1 the receiving bank are governed by subsection (b)(1), as though the sender were a bank. Proof of
2 notice may be made by any admissible evidence. The receiving bank satisfies the burden of proof
3 if it proves that the sender, before the payment order was accepted, signed a ~~writing~~ record
4 stating the information to which the notice relates.

5 ~~(c) In this section, “signed”, with respect to a record that is not a writing, includes the~~
6 ~~attachment to or logical association with the record of an electronic symbol, sound, or process~~
7 ~~with the present intent to adopt or accept the record.~~

8 * * *

9 * * *

10 **Section 4A-~~2~~210. Rejection of Payment Order.**

11 (a) A payment order is rejected by the receiving bank by a notice of rejection transmitted
12 to the sender orally, ~~electronically~~, or in ~~writing~~ a record. A notice of rejection need not use any
13 particular words and is sufficient if it indicates that the receiving bank is rejecting the order or
14 will not execute or pay the order. Rejection is effective when the notice is given if transmission
15 is by a means that is reasonable in the circumstances. If notice of rejection is given by a means
16 that is not reasonable, rejection is effective when the notice is received. If an agreement of the
17 sender and receiving bank establishes the means to be used to reject a payment order, (i) any
18 means complying with the agreement is reasonable and (ii) any means not complying is not
19 reasonable unless no significant delay in receipt of the notice resulted from the use of the
20 noncomplying means.

21 * * *

22 **Section 4A-211. Cancellation and Amendment of Payment Order.**

1 (a) A communication of the sender of a payment order cancelling or amending the order
2 may be transmitted to the receiving bank orally,~~electronically~~, or in writing a record. If a
3 security procedure is in effect between the sender and the receiving bank, the communication is
4 not effective to cancel or amend the order unless the communication is verified pursuant to the
5 security procedure or the bank agrees to the cancellation or amendment.

6 * * *

7 Official Comment

8 * * *

9 2. Subsection (a) allows a cancellation or amendment of a payment order to be
10 communicated to the receiving bank “orally,~~electronically~~, or in writing a record.” The quoted
11 phrase is consistent with the language of Section 4A-103(a) applicable to payment orders.
12 Cancellations and amendments are normally subject to verification pursuant to security
13 procedures to the same extent as payment orders. Subsection (a) recognizes this fact by
14 providing that in cases in which there is a security procedure in effect between the sender and the
15 receiving bank the bank is not bound by a communication cancelling or amending an order
16 unless verification has been made. This is necessary to protect the bank because under subsection
17 (b) a cancellation or amendment can be effective by unilateral action of the sender. Without
18 verification the bank cannot be sure whether the communication was or was not effective to
19 cancel or amend a previously verified payment order.

20
21 * * *

22 ARTICLE 5

23 LETTERS OF CREDIT

24 ~~Section 5-102. Definitions.~~

25 ~~(a) In this article:~~

26 ~~* * *~~

27 ~~(14A) “Signed,” with respect to a record that is not a writing, includes the~~
28 ~~attachment to or logical association with the record an electronic sound, symbol, or process with~~
29 ~~present intent to adopt or accept the record.~~

~~Reporter's Note~~

1. ~~“Signed.” The definition of “signed” contained in Section 5-102(a)(14A) is copied from Section 3-604(c). It would accommodate the use of electronic signatures under Sections 5-104(i), 5-108(i)(5), 5-113(a), (b), (c) and (d), and 5-116(a) without invalidating the use of traditional, non-electronic signatures on paper documents in letter-of-credit transactions. A biometric measurement or calculation would be an “electronic . . . process” and that technology would be covered by the proposed new definition.~~

~~2. The Drafting Committee plans to consider more generally the definition and use of “signed,” which also is defined in Section 1-201(b)(37), throughout the Uniform Commercial Code.~~

* * *

Section 5-116. Choice of Law and Forum.

(a) The liability of an issuer, nominated person, or adviser for action or omission is governed by the law of the jurisdiction chosen by an agreement in the form of a record signed or otherwise authenticated by the affected parties in the manner provided in Section 5-104 or by a provision in the person's letter of credit, confirmation, or other undertaking. The jurisdiction whose law is chosen need not bear any relation to the transaction.

(b) Unless subsection (a) applies, the liability of an issuer, nominated person, or adviser for action or omission is governed by the law of the jurisdiction in which the person is located. The person is considered to be located at the address indicated in the person's undertaking. If more than one address is indicated, the person is considered to be located at the address from which the person's undertaking was issued.

(c) For the purpose of jurisdiction, choice of law, and recognition of interbranch letters of credit, but not enforcement of a judgment, all branches of a bank are considered separate juridical entities and a bank is considered to be located at the place where its relevant branch is considered to be located under this subsection (d).

(d) A branch of a bank is considered to be located at the address indicated in the branch's undertaking. If more than one address is indicated, the branch is considered to be located at the address from which the undertaking was issued.

~~(e)~~(e) Except as otherwise provided in this subsection, the liability of an issuer, nominated person, or adviser is governed by any rules of custom or practice, such as the Uniform Customs and Practice for Documentary Credits, to which the letter of credit, confirmation, or other undertaking is expressly made subject. If (i) this article would govern the liability of an issuer, nominated person, or adviser under subsection (a) or (b), (ii) the relevant undertaking incorporates rules of custom or practice, and (iii) there is conflict between this article and those rules as applied to that undertaking, those rules govern except to the extent of any conflict with the nonvariable provisions specified in Section 5-103(c).

~~(d)~~(f) If there is conflict between this article and Article 3, 4, 4A, or 9, this article governs.

(g) The forum for settling disputes arising out of an undertaking within this article may be chosen in the manner and with the binding effect that governing law may be chosen in accordance with subsection (a).

Reporter's Note

Clarification of ambiguity as to separateness of bank branches. The last sentence of existing subsection (b) is placed in a new subsection (c) and a new subsection (d) is added. These revisions are necessary to eliminate a potential ambiguity arising from the first sentence of subsection (b). The first sentence has been construed incorrectly as meaning that the last sentence, which recognizes the separateness of bank branches for the specified purposes, is inapplicable when a governing law has been chosen pursuant to subsection (a). These amendments would reject that construction and override cases such as *Zeeco, Inc. v. JPMorgan Chase Bank*, Case No. 17 -CV-384-JED-FHM, 2018 WL 1414119 (N.D. Okla. Mar. 21, 2018), *amending opinion dated March 20, 2018, both opinions vacated*, 2019 WL 3543081, 2019 U.S. Dist. LEXIS 133756 (Feb. 8, 2019).

* * *

1 ARTICLE 7

2 DOCUMENTS OF TITLE

3 Section 7-~~102. Definitions and Index of Definitions.~~

4 ~~(a) In this article, unless the context otherwise requires:~~

5 ~~* * *~~

6 ~~(9) “Person entitled under the document” means the holder, in the case of a~~
7 ~~negotiable document of title, or the person to which delivery of the goods is to be made by the~~
8 ~~terms of, or pursuant to instructions in a record under, a nonnegotiable document of title.~~

9 ~~* * *~~

10 ~~(11) “Sign” means, with present intent to authenticate or adopt a record:~~

11 ~~(A) to execute or adopt a tangible symbol; or~~

12 ~~(B) to attach to or logically associate with the record an electronic sound,~~
13 ~~symbol, or process.~~

14 ~~* * *~~

15 Official Comment

16 ~~* * *~~

17 ~~6. “Person entitled under the document” is moved from former Section 7-403.~~

18
19 ~~In the case of a negotiable document of title, the person entitled is the holder. See~~
20 ~~Section 1-201(b)(21) (defining “holder”). For a nonnegotiable document of title, the person~~
21 ~~entitled is the person provided in the terms of the document or instructions under the document.~~
22 ~~A transferee of a nonnegotiable document to which the document has been delivered acquires the~~
23 ~~transferee’s rights and rights that the transferor had actual authority to convey. Section 7-504(a).~~
24 ~~However, until but not after the bailee receives notice of a transfer, such a transferee’s rights are~~
25 ~~subject to those of persons identified in Section 7-504(b), including “as against the bailee, by~~
26 ~~good faith dealings of the bailee with the transferor. Moreover, such a transferee is *not* a person~~
27 ~~entitled under the document unless so provided in the document or in instructions under the~~
28 ~~document.~~

1 Neither the definition nor the official comments to Article 7 provide an explanation of
2 what constitutes an “instruction under” a nonnegotiable document. In practice the term is
3 generally understood to include an instruction to the bailee, by the person named in the
4 document, to deliver the goods to a transferee of the document or to another person. An
5 instruction under a nonnegotiable document should be distinguished from a mere “notice” or
6 “notification” to the bailee of a transfer or security interest, as contemplated by Sections 7-
7 504(b) and 9-312(d)(2). However, an instruction could, functionally, also constitute such a
8 notice.

9
10 * * *

11 Reporter’s Note

12
13
14 Deletion of subsection (a)(11). Subsection (a)(11) has been deleted as unnecessary in
15 view of the revised definition of “signed” in Section 1-201.

16 Section 7-106. Control of Electronic Document of Title.

17
18 (a) **General rule.** A person has control of an electronic document of title if a system
19 employed for evidencing the transfer of interests in the electronic document reliably establishes
20 that person as the person to which the electronic document was issued or transferred.

21 (b) **Single authoritative copy.** A system satisfies subsection (a), and a person is
22 ~~deemed to have~~ has control of an electronic document of title, if the document is created, stored,
23 and ~~assigned~~ transferred in such a manner that:

24 (1) a single authoritative copy of the document exists which is unique,
25 identifiable, and, except as otherwise provided in paragraphs (4), (5), and (6), unalterable;

26 (2) the authoritative copy identifies the person asserting control as:
27 (A) the person to which the document was issued; or
28 (B) if the authoritative copy indicates that the document has been
29 transferred, the person to which the document was most recently transferred;

30 (3) the authoritative copy is communicated to and maintained by the person
31 asserting control or its designated custodian;

1 (4) copies or amendments that add or change an identified ~~assignee~~ transferee of
2 the authoritative copy can be made only with the consent of the person asserting control;

3 (5) each copy of the authoritative copy and any copy of a copy is readily
4 identifiable as a copy that is not the authoritative copy; and

5 (6) any amendment of the authoritative copy is readily identifiable as authorized
6 or unauthorized.

7 **(c) [One or more authoritative electronic copies.]** A system satisfies subsection (a) and
8 a person has control of an electronic document of title if an electronic copy of the document, a
9 record attached to or logically associated with the electronic copy, or a system in which the
10 electronic copy is recorded:

11 (1) enables the person to readily identify each electronic copy as an authoritative
12 copy or nonauthoritative copy;

13 (2) enables the person readily to identify itself in any way, including by name,
14 identifying number, cryptographic key, office, or account number, as the person to which each
15 authoritative electronic copy was issued or transferred; and

16 (3) gives the person exclusive power, subject to subsection ~~e~~ (g), to:

17 (A) prevent others from [adding to or changing][altering] the person to
18 which each authoritative electronic copy has been issued or transferred; and

19 (B) transfer control of ~~the each~~ authoritative ~~electronic~~ copy.

20 **(d) [Obtaining control through another person.]** A person has control of an electronic
21 document of title if another person, other than the transferor of an interest in the document:

22 (1) has control of the document and acknowledges that it has control on behalf of
23 the person, or

(2) obtains control of the document after having acknowledged that it will obtain control of the document on behalf of the person.

(e) [No requirement to acknowledge.] A person that has control under this section is not required to acknowledge that it has or will obtain control on behalf of another person.

(f) [No duties or confirmation.] If a person acknowledges that it has or will obtain control on behalf of another person, unless the person otherwise agrees or law other than this article otherwise provides, the person does not owe any duty to the other person and is not required to confirm the acknowledgment to another person.

(g) [Meaning of exclusive.] A power is exclusive under subsection (c)(3), even if:
(1) the authoritative electronic copy, a record attached to or logically associated with the electronic copy, or a system in which the electronic copy is recorded limits the use of the document or has a protocol that is programmed to cause a change, including a transfer or loss of control; or

(2) the person ~~has agreed to share~~ shares the power with another person.

Reporter's Note

1. *Background of revisions.* Draft § 7-106 on control of electronic documents of title preserves the existing subsection (a) general rule and the existing subsection (b) “safe harbor.” The minor stylistic revisions are not substantive. The other proposed revisions add an additional “safe harbor” in subsection (c), ~~along the lines of the proposed revisions to draft § 9-105 on control of chattel paper evidenced by electronic records, and~~ and a new subsection (d) on control through another person.

2. *Control of electronic documents of title ~~evidenced by an electronic record.~~* Draft § 7-106(e), ~~supplemented by.~~ As Note 1 indicates, subsections (e) and (f), b) are substantially unchanged. *It is important to note that compliance with the new conditions for control in subsection (c) also would satisfy the conditions provided in subsection (b).* However, subsection (b) has been retained out of an abundance of caution and to provide assurances that existing systems for control of electronic documents of title under current law will continue to be viable after the draft revisions become effective. Subsection (c) generally follows proposed revisions to draft § 9-105 on control of ~~an authoritative electronic copy of a record evidencing~~ chattel paper: ~~Subsection (e) evidenced by electronic records.~~ It differs from subsection (b), which is based on

1 a “single authoritative copy” of an electronic document of title. *See generally* draft § 9-105 and
2 Reporter’s Note. The new conditions for “control” in subsection (c) are meant to reflect the
3 functions that possession serves with respect to writings, but in a more accurate and
4 technologically flexible way than does the current definition in subsection (b).

5
6 3. *Nonnegotiable electronic documents of title.* This section applies to both negotiable
7 and nonnegotiable electronic documents of title. For negotiable electronic documents of title,
8 “delivery” is a necessary condition for negotiation, and therefore for due negotiation, under
9 Section 7-501(b). “Delivery” of an electronic document of title is defined in Section 1-
10 201(b)(15) as the “voluntary transfer of control.” The person in control of a negotiable document
11 also is a “holder,” as defined in Section 1-201(21)(C). Of course, nonnegotiable documents
12 cannot be negotiated.

13
14 A security interest in an electronic document of title, whether negotiable or
15 nonnegotiable, may be perfected by control. Section 9-314(a). But perfection of a security
16 interest by control in a nonnegotiable document does not perfect a security interest in goods
17 covered by the document and does not confer on a secured party or other purchaser the status of
18 a person entitled. See Section 7-102(a)(9) (defining “person entitled under the document”) &
19 Comment 6. (On perfection of security interests in negotiable documents of title and goods
20 covered by negotiable and nonnegotiable documents of title, see generally draft § 9-312(a), (c),
21 and (g) & Comment 7.) However, a system for control of electronic documents in which bailees
22 participate could be designed to provide that a transfer of control to a purchaser constitutes a
23 reissuance of the document in the name of a secured party under Section 9-312(d)(1) or a notice
24 to the bailee of a security interest under Section 9-312(d)(2). A system also could provide that a
25 transfer of control constitutes an instruction under the document that would make the transferee a
26 person entitled.

27
28 4. Control through another person.
29

30 a. Subsection (d) provides for a person to obtain control through the control of
31 another person. It follows draft revisions to the corresponding provisions for control of deposit
32 accounts (draft § 9-104), control of authoritative electronic copies of records evidencing chattel
33 paper (draft § 9-105), control of electronic money (draft § 9-105A), and control of controllable
34 electronic records (draft § 12-105). For a brief discussion, see draft § 12-105, Reporter’s Note
35 78.

36
37 b. Subsections (e) and (f) derive from Section 9-313(f) and (g). Subsection (e)
38 makes clear that a person that has control under this section has no duty to acknowledge that it
39 has or will obtain control on behalf of another person. Arrangements for a person to
40 acknowledge that it has or will obtain control on behalf of another person are not standardized.
41 Accordingly, subsection (f) leaves to the agreement of the parties and to any other applicable law
42 any duties of a person that does acknowledge that it has or will obtain control on behalf of
43 another person and provides that a person making an acknowledgment is not required to confirm
44 the acknowledgment to another person.

45
46 * * *

1 **Section 7-403. Obligation of Bailee to Deliver; Excuse.**

2 (a) A bailee shall deliver the goods to a person entitled under a document of title if the
3 person complies with subsections (b) and (c), unless and to the extent that the bailee establishes
4 any of the following:

5 (1) delivery of the goods to a person whose receipt was rightful as against the
6 claimant;

7 (2) damage to or delay, loss, or destruction of the goods for which the bailee is not
8 liable;

9 (3) previous sale or other disposition of the goods in lawful enforcement of a lien
10 or on a warehouse's lawful termination of storage;

11 (4) the exercise by a seller of its right to stop delivery pursuant to Section 2-705
12 or by a lessor of its right to stop delivery pursuant to Section 2A-526;

13 (5) a diversion, reconsignment, or other disposition pursuant to Section 7-303;

14 (6) release, satisfaction, or any other personal defense against the claimant; or

15 (7) any other lawful excuse.

16 (b) A person claiming goods covered by a document of title shall satisfy the bailee's lien
17 if the bailee so requests or if the bailee is prohibited by law from delivering the goods until the
18 charges are paid.

19 (c) Unless a person claiming the goods is a person against which the document of title
20 does not confer a right under Section 7-503(a):

21 (1) the person claiming under a document shall surrender possession or control of
22 any outstanding negotiable document covering the goods for cancellation or indication of partial
23 deliveries; and

1 (2) the bailee shall cancel the document or conspicuously indicate in the
2 document the partial delivery or the bailee is liable to any person to which the document is duly
3 negotiated.

4 **Official Comment**

5 * * *

6
7 5. In addition to compliance with subsection (b), ~~Subsection~~ subsection (c) conditions the
8 bailee's duty to deliver the goods to a person entitled under a negotiable document on the
9 surrender of possession or control of the document for cancellation or indication of partial
10 deliveries. It also states the obvious duty of a bailee to take up a negotiable document or note
11 partial deliveries conspicuously thereon, and the result of failure in that duty. It is subject to only
12 one exception, that stated in subsection (a)(1) of this section and in Section 7-503(a). Subsection
13 (c) is limited to cases of delivery to a claimant; it has no application, for example, where goods
14 held under a negotiable document are lawfully sold to enforce the bailee's lien.

15
16 Subsection (c) does not specify any conditions on the duty of the bailee to deliver the
17 goods covered by a nonnegotiable document to a person entitled, other than the conditions
18 inherent in the definition of "person entitled under the document." See Section 7-102(a)(9)
19 (defining "person entitled under the document") & Comment 6.

20
21 6. When courts are considering subsection (a)(7), "any other lawful excuse," among
22 others, refers to compliance with court orders under Sections 7-601, 7-602 and 7-603.

23
24 * * *

25 **Section 7-504. Rights Acquired in Absence of Due Negotiation; Effect of**
26 **Diversion; Stoppage of Delivery.**

27 (a) A transferee of a document of title, whether negotiable or nonnegotiable, to which the
28 document has been delivered but not duly negotiated, acquires the title and rights that its
29 transferor had or had actual authority to convey.

30 (b) In the case of a transfer of a nonnegotiable document of title, until but not after the
31 bailee receives notice of the transfer, the rights of the transferee may be defeated:

32 (1) by those creditors of the transferor which could treat the transfer as void under
33 Section 2-402 or 2A-308 ;

(2) by a buyer from the transferor in ordinary course of business if the bailee has delivered the goods to the buyer or received notification of the buyer's rights;

(3) by a lessee from the transferor in ordinary course of business if the bailee has
delivered the goods to the lessee or received notification of the lessee's rights; or

(4) as against the bailee, by good-faith dealings of the bailee with the transferor.

Official Comment

* * *

2. As in the case of transfer--as opposed to “due negotiation”--of negotiable documents, subsection (a) empowers the transferor of a nonnegotiable document to transfer only such rights as the transferor has or has “actual authority” to convey. In contrast to situations involving the goods themselves the operation of estoppel or agency principles is not here recognized to enable the transferor to convey greater rights than the transferor actually has. Subsection (b) makes it clear, however, that the transferee of a nonnegotiable document may acquire rights greater in some respects than those of his transferor by giving notice of the transfer to the bailee. New subsection (b)(3) provides for the rights of a lessee in the ordinary course.

Note that a transferee of a nonnegotiable document that takes delivery of the document under subsection (a) would not, *ipso facto*, be a “person entitled under the document” with a right to receive delivery of the goods from the bailee under Section 7-403(a). See Section 7-102(a)(9) (defining “person entitled under the document”) & Comment 6.

Subsection (b)(2)&(3) require delivery of the goods. Delivery of the goods means the voluntary transfer of physical possession of the goods. See amended 2-103.

* * *

ARTICLE 8

INVESTMENT SECURITIES

Reporter's Prefatory Note to Article 8 Amendments

Proposed amendments to the official comments to Section 8-102 primarily serve to make clear that a controllable electronic record may be a financial asset credited to a securities account under Article 8. *See also* draft § 12-102, Reporter’s Note 1. The proposed amendment to Section 8-106(d) on control through another person conforms that provision to proposed amendments to Section 7-106 (control of electronic documents of title) and Section 9-105

(control of authoritative electronic copies of records evidencing chattel paper) and to draft §§ 9-105A (control of electronic money) and 12-105 (control of controllable electronic records). The proposed amendment to Section 8-303 conforms the text on the rights of a protected purchaser to the corresponding provision for a qualifying purchaser under Article 12. The proposed revision of Section 8-501 addresses the specified financial assets as to which both a securities intermediary and its customer have control. These financial assets would be treated as being held directly by the customer and would not be included in a security entitlement.

Section 8-102. Definitions and Index of Definitions.

* * *

~~(b) Other definitions applying to a)~~ In this Article:

* * *

(6) "Communicate" means to:

(i) send a signed ~~writing~~ record; or

(ii) transmit information by any mechanism agreed upon by the persons

transmitting and receiving the ~~sections~~ information.

* * *

(9) "Financial asset," except as otherwise provided in ~~which they appear are~~

Section 8-103, means:

"Appropriate person". Section 8-107.

"Control". Section 8-106.

["Chattel paper". Section 9-102.]

"Controllable account". Section 9-102.

"Controllable electronic record". Section 12-102.

"Controllable payment intangible". Section 9-102.

"Delivery". Section 8-301.

"Electronic money". Section 9-102.

"Investment company security". Section 8-103.

"Issuer". Section 8-201.

"Overissue". Section 8-210.

"Protected purchaser". Section 8-303.

"Securities account". Section 8-501.

(i) a security;

1 (ii) an obligation of a person or a share, participation, or other interest in a
2 person or in property or an enterprise of a person, which is, or is of a type, dealt in or traded on
3 financial markets, or which is recognized in any area in which it is issued or dealt in as a medium
4 for investment; or

5 (iii) any property that is held by a securities intermediary for another
6 person in a securities account if the securities intermediary has expressly agreed with the other
7 person that the property is to be treated as a financial asset under this Article.

8 As context requires, the term means either the interest itself or the means by which a person's
9 claim to it is evidenced, including a certificated or uncertificated security, a security certificate,
10 or a security entitlement.

11 * * *

12 **Official Comment**

13 * * *

14 9. "Financial asset." The definition of "financial asset," in conjunction with the definition
15 of "securities account" in Section 8-501, sets the scope of the indirect holding system rules of
16 Part 5 of Revised Article 8. The Part 5 rules apply not only to securities held through
17 intermediaries, but also to other financial assets held through intermediaries. The term financial
18 asset is defined to include not only securities but also a broader category of obligations, shares,
19 participations, and interests.

20
21 Having separate definitions of security and financial asset makes it possible to separate
22 the question of the proper scope of the traditional Article 8 rules from the question of the proper
23 scope of the new indirect holding system- rules. Some forms of financial assets should be
24 covered by the indirect holding system rules of Part 5, but not by the rules of Parts 2, 3, and 4.
25 The term financial asset is used to cover such property. Because the term security entitlement is
26 defined in terms of financial assets rather than securities, the rules concerning security
27 entitlements set out in Part 5 of Article 8 and in Revised Article 9 apply to the broader class of
28 financial assets.

29
30 The fact that something does or could fall within the definition of financial asset does not,
31 without more, trigger Article 8 coverage. The indirect holding system rules of Revised Article 8
32 apply only if the financial asset is in fact held in a securities account, so that the interest of the
33 person who holds the financial asset through the securities account is a security entitlement.

1 Thus, questions of the scope of the indirect holding system rules cannot be framed as “Is such-
2 and-such a ‘financial asset’ under Article 8?” Rather, one must analyze whether the relationship
3 between an institution and a person on whose behalf the institution holds an asset falls within the
4 scope of the term securities account as defined in Section 8-501. That question turns in large
5 measure on whether it makes sense to apply the Part 5 rules to the relationship.
6

7 It is not necessary for all of the Part 5 rules to be relevant to a particular financial asset
8 for the relevant property to qualify as a “financial asset” credited to a securities account. Many of
9 the duties set forth in Part 5 will often be relevant to a digital asset treated as a financial asset
10 credited to a securities account, including the duty to exercise rights as directed by the
11 entitlement holder, comply with the entitlement holder’s entitlement orders, and change the
12 position to another form of holding. If the parties agree to treat a digital asset as a financial asset
13 under Article 8 and the digital asset is in fact held in a securities account for an entitlement
14 holder, the rules applicable to “controllable electronic records” under Article 12 would not apply
15 to the entitlement holder’s security entitlement related to the financial asset. If the financial asset
16 itself is a controllable electronic record, however, then the rules in Article 12 would apply to the
17 securities intermediary’s rights with respect to the controllable electronic record.
18

19 The term financial asset is used to refer both to the underlying asset and the particular
20 means by which ownership of that asset is evidenced. Thus, with respect to a certificated
21 security, the term financial asset may, as context requires, refer either to the interest or obligation
22 of the issuer or to the security certificate representing that interest or obligation. Similarly, if a
23 person holds a security or other financial asset through a securities account, the term financial
24 asset may, as context requires, refer either to the underlying asset or to the person’s security
25 entitlement.
26

27 * * *

28 14. “Securities intermediary.” A “securities intermediary” is a person that in the ordinary
29 course of its business maintains securities accounts for others and is acting in that capacity. The
30 most common examples of securities intermediaries would be clearing corporations holding
31 securities for their participants, banks acting as securities custodians, and brokers holding
32 securities on behalf of their customers. However, a person need not be such an entity in order to
33 be a securities intermediary. Because a “securities account” is an account to which a financial
34 asset is or may be credited under Section 8-501(a) and the definition of “financial asset” is not
35 limited to securities, a person may be a “securities intermediary” even if that person does not
36 credit “securities” (as defined in Article 8) to the account. Rather, the securities accounts that a
37 securities intermediary maintains may consist exclusively of financial assets described in Section
38 8-102(a)(9)(ii) and (iii). Clearing corporations are listed separately as a category of securities
39 intermediary in subparagraph (i) even though in most circumstances they would fall within the
40 general definition in subparagraph (ii). The reason is to simplify the analysis of arrangements
41 such as the NSCC-DTC system in which NSCC performs the comparison, clearance, and netting
42 function, while DTC acts as the depository. Because NSCC is a registered clearing agency under
43 the federal securities laws, it is a clearing corporation and hence a securities intermediary under
44 Article 8, regardless of whether it is at any particular time or in any particular aspect of its
45 operations holding securities on behalf of its participants.

1 The terms securities intermediary and broker have different meanings. Broker means a
2 person engaged in the business of buying and selling securities, as agent for others or as
3 principal. Securities intermediary means a person maintaining securities accounts for others. A
4 stockbroker, in the colloquial sense, may or may not be acting as a securities intermediary.
5

6 The definition of securities intermediary includes the requirement that the person in
7 question is “acting in the capacity” of maintaining securities accounts for others. This is to take
8 account of the fact that a particular entity, such as a bank, may act in many different capacities in
9 securities transactions. A bank may act as a transfer agent for issuers, as a securities custodian
10 for institutional investors and private investors, as a dealer in government securities, as a lender
11 taking securities as collateral, and as a provider of general payment and collection services that
12 might be used in connection with securities transactions. A bank that maintains securities
13 accounts for its customers would be a securities intermediary with respect to those accounts; but
14 if it takes a pledge of securities from a borrower to secure a loan, it is not thereby acting as a
15 securities intermediary with respect to the pledged securities, since it holds them for its own
16 account rather than for a customer. In other circumstances, those two functions might be
17 combined. For example, if the bank is a government securities dealer it may maintain securities
18 accounts for customers and also provide the customers with margin credit to purchase or carry
19 the securities, in much the same way that brokers provide margin loans to their customers.
20

21 The definition of securities intermediary includes the requirement that the person in
22 question “in the ordinary course of its business maintain securities accounts for others”. This
23 “ordinary course” requirement does not have a fixed quantitative requirement and is determined
24 by the facts of each case. Thus, a person need not necessarily satisfy a specified threshold of
25 activity or necessarily have a minimum number of customers.
26

27 **Reporter’s Note**

28
29 *Relationship between Articles 8 and 12.* These draft amendments to the Official
30 Comments to Article 8 are intended to make clear that a controllable electronic record may be a
31 financial asset credited to a securities account under Article 8 and to identify several significant
32 aspects of the relationship between Articles 8 and 12. *See also* draft § 12-102, Reporter’s Note 1
33 (second paragraph).
34

35 * * *

36 **Section 8-106. Control.**

37 * * *

38 (d) A purchaser has “control” of a security entitlement if:

39 * * *

(3) another person, other than the transferor of an interest in the security entitlement: has control of the security entitlement on behalf of the purchaser or, having previously acquired control of the security entitlement, acknowledges that it has control on behalf of the purchaser.

(A) has control of the security entitlement and acknowledges that it has control on behalf of the purchaser, or

(B) obtains control of the security entitlement after having acknowledged that it will obtain control of the security entitlement on behalf of the purchaser.

* * *

(h) [No requirement to acknowledge.] A person that has control under this section is not required to acknowledge that it has control on behalf of a purchaser.

(i) [No duties or confirmation.] If a person acknowledges that it has or will obtain control on behalf of a purchaser, unless the person otherwise agrees or law other than this article otherwise provides, the person does not owe any duty to the purchaser and is not required to confirm the acknowledgment to another person.

Reporter's Note

1. Control through another person.

a. The proposed amendment to subsection (d)(3) would conform that provision for control through another person to the draft revisions to the corresponding provisions for control of other assets. See Reporter's Prefatory Note to Article 8 Amendments and draft § 12-105, Reporter's Note 78.

b. New subsections (h) and (i) derive from Section 9-313(f) and (g). Subsection (h) makes clear that a person that has control under this section has no duty to acknowledge that it has or will obtain control on behalf of a purchaser. Arrangements for a person to acknowledge that it has or will obtain control on behalf of the purchaser are not standardized. Accordingly, subsection (i) leaves to the agreement of the parties and to any other applicable law any duties of a person that does acknowledge that it has or will obtain control on behalf of a purchaser and

1 provides that a person making an acknowledgment is not required to confirm the
2 acknowledgment to another person.

3
4 * * *

5 **Section 8-303. Protected Purchaser.**

6 (a) “Protected purchaser” means a purchaser of a certificated or uncertificated security, or
7 of an interest therein, who:

8 (1) gives value;

9 (2) does not have notice of any adverse claim to the security; and

10 (3) obtains control of the certificated or uncertificated security.

11 (b) ~~In addition to acquiring the rights of a purchaser, a~~ A protected purchaser acquires its
12 interest in the security free of any adverse claim.

13 **Reporter’s Note**

14 The proposed change conforms subsection (b) to draft § 12-104(d) on the rights of a
15 qualifying purchaser of a controllable electronic record, controllable account, or controllable
16 payment intangible. A protected purchaser acquires the rights of a purchaser under Section 8-
17 302. Consequently, the deletion of the reference in the current text to the rights of a purchaser
18 does not diminish the rights of a protected purchaser under this section.

19
20 * * *

21
22 **Section 8-501. Securities Account; Acquisition of Security Entitlement from**
23 **Securities Intermediary.**

24 * * *

25 (d) If a securities intermediary holds a financial asset for another person, and the A
26 person is treated as holding a financial asset directly rather than as having a security entitlement
27 with respect to the financial asset if:

28 (1) the financial asset is registered in the name of, payable to the order of, or
29 specially indorsed to the ~~other~~ person, and has not been indorsed to the securities intermediary or

1 in blank, the other person is treated as holding the financial asset directly rather than as having a
2 security entitlement with respect to the financial asset. ~~or.~~

3 (2) * * *

4 Official Comment

5 * * *

6
7
8 4. Part 5 of Article 8 sets out a carefully designed system of rules for the indirect holding
9 system. Persons who hold securities through brokers or custodians have security entitlements
10 that are governed by Part 5, rather than being treated as the direct holders of securities.
11 Subsection (d) specifies the limited circumstance in which a customer who leaves a financial
12 asset with a broker or other securities intermediary has a direct interest in the financial asset,
13 rather than a security entitlement. The customer can be a direct holder only if the security
14 certificate, or other financial asset, is a controllable account registered in the name of, payable to
15 the order of, or specially indorsed to the customer, and has not been indorsed by the customer to
16 the securities intermediary or in blank. The distinction between those circumstances where the
17 customer can be treated as direct owner and those where the customer has a security entitlement
18 is essentially the same as the distinction drawn under the federal bankruptcy code between
19 customer name securities and customer property. The distinction does not turn on any form of
20 physical identification or segregation. A customer who delivers certificates to a broker with
21 blank indorsements or stock powers is not a direct holder but has a security entitlement, even
22 though the broker holds those certificates in some form of separate safe-keeping arrangement for
23 that particular customer. The customer remains the direct holder only if there is no indorsement
24 or stock power so that further action by the customer is required to place the certificates in a
25 form where they can be transferred by the broker.

26
27 The rule of subsection (d) corresponds to the rule set out in Section 8-301(a)(3)
28 specifying when acquisition of possession of a certificate by a securities intermediary
29 counts as “delivery” to the customer.

30
31 Subsection (d) uses terminology applicable to conventional certificated securities (e.g.,
32 “indorsed”) and contemplates the limited circumstances in which a securities intermediary
33 (defined in Section 8-102(a)(14) to include only a clearing corporation or another person that in
34 the ordinary course of its business maintains securities accounts for others and that is acting in
35 that capacity) may hold a financial asset for a customer under a direct holding arrangement rather
36 than as a security entitlement. However, assets such as controllable electronic records,
37 controllable electronic record, accounts, and controllable payment intangible, [electronic
38 document of title,] [or] electronic money[, or an electronic copy of intangibles also might be
39 controlled by a record evidencing chattel paper] and both the securities intermediary and for the
40 benefit of a customer under a similar direct holding arrangement. For example, the person each
41 has securities intermediary and the customer might share control of the financial asset under
42 Section 7-106, 9-105, 9-105A, 9-107A, or 12-105 an arrangement whereby the exercise of
43 powers, such as the power to transfer control, requires the exercise of the power by both the

intermediary and the customer. Such an arrangement would be, functionally, substantially equivalent to the arrangement explicitly contemplated by subsection (d). Alternatively, however, the person holding such an asset for the benefit of another may not be acting in the capacity of a securities intermediary, even if the person also regularly acts in that capacity. In such a case the relationship would be governed by the agreement of the parties and the application of law other than this article.

* * *

Reporter's Note

~~1. *Financial assets held for a person other than an entitlement holder.* The proposed amendment of subsection (d) would address assets subject to control that might be held by a securities intermediary for a person other than an entitlement holder. Subsection (d) generally applies to "customer name securities" (see 15 U.S. Code § 78111(3)) that are held directly by a securities intermediary's customer. However, subsection (d) uses terminology applicable to conventional securities (e.g., "indorsed"). The proposed amendment would treat situations of shared control between a securities intermediary and its customer as analogous to such customer name securities.~~

~~2. As indicated by the terms placed in square brackets in subsection (d)(2), the Drafting Committee should consider which assets that are subject to control under the Uniform Commercial Code should be covered by the new provision.~~

* * *

ARTICLE 9

SECURED TRANSACTIONS

Reporter's Prefatory Note to Article 9 Amendments

1. *General.* This draft proposes extensive amendments to Article 9. Many of the amendments are necessary to conform Article 9 to new Article 12, which, along with its Reporter's Notes, should be read along with the Article 9 amendments and Reporter's Notes. Other material amendments relate to chattel paper and money.

2. *Article 12-related conforming amendments.* Article 12-related conforming amendments to Article 9 include the addition of two new types of collateral: controllable accounts (a subset of accounts) and controllable payment intangibles (a subset of payment intangibles, which is a subset of general intangibles). Perfection of a security interest in a controllable electronic record, controllable account, or controllable payment intangible may be by control or by filing a financing statement. Control of a controllable electronic record is determined under draft § 12-105. Control of a controllable account or controllable payment intangible is achieved by obtaining control of the controllable electronic record that evidences the account or payment intangible. Draft § 9-107A. The rights of a secured party that takes free

1 of competing property interests as a qualifying purchaser of a controllable account, controllable
2 electronic record, or controllable payment intangible are respected under Article 9. Draft § 9-
3 331.

4
5 The law of the controllable record's jurisdiction under draft 12-107 governs perfection
6 by control and priority of a security interest in a controllable account, controllable electronic
7 record, or controllable payment intangible. The law of the jurisdiction in which a debtor is
8 located governs perfection by filing for such collateral. Draft § 9-306A.

9
10 The draft also contains several other Article 12-related conforming amendments to
11 Article 9.

12
13 3. *Chattel paper-related amendments.* These amendments primarily address two issues
14 that have arisen with respect to transactions in chattel paper.

15
16 First, the definition of "chattel paper" creates uncertainty in "bundled" or "hybrid"
17 transactions in which monetary obligations exist not only under a lease of goods but also with
18 respect to other property, including software, and services relating to the leased goods.
19 Frequently, the value of the non-goods aspect of a transaction is substantially greater than the
20 value of the lessee's rights under the lease of goods. Those who finance chattel paper and other
21 rights to payment have become uncertain as to whether these transactions give rise to chattel
22 paper. The draft resolves this issue by treating only those transactions whose predominant
23 purpose was to give the obligor (lessee) the right to possession and use of the goods as giving
24 rise to "chattel paper."

25
26 Second, the statutory distinction between "tangible chattel paper" and "electronic chattel
27 paper" causes practical problems. As to tangible chattel paper (i.e., evidenced by writings),
28 problems arose in the case of multiple originals of writings and situations in which separate
29 writings covered different components of chattel paper. Official comments issued in connection
30 with the 1999 amendments to Article 9 addressed these issues. As to electronic chattel paper, the
31 safe harbor for control is based on a "single authoritative copy" of the chattel paper. Moreover,
32 in some situations tangible chattel paper is converted to electronic form and electronic chattel
33 paper is converted to tangible form. Additional uncertainty exists when one or more records
34 referred to in the current definition comprise one or more tangible authoritative copies of the
35 records that evidence the right to payment and rights in related property and one or more
36 electronic authoritative copies of those records also exist.

37
38 The draft provides a single rule, under which a security interest in chattel paper can be
39 perfected by taking possession of the tangible authoritative copies, if any, and obtaining control
40 of the electronic authoritative copies, if any. This single rule would address cases where some
41 records evidencing chattel paper are electronic and some are tangible or where a record in one
42 medium is replaced by a record in another.

43
44 The draft also defines chattel paper more accurately, as the right to payment of a
45 monetary obligation that is secured by a security interest in specific goods or owed under a lease
46 of specific goods, if the right to payment and interest in the goods are evidenced by a record.

1 Finally, the draft provides a new choice-of-law rule for perfection and priority of security
2 interests in chattel paper that is evidenced only by authoritative electronic copies of records. For
3 such chattel paper, new draft § 9-306A provides that perfection and priority are governed by the
4 law of the “electronic chattel paper’s jurisdiction,” based loosely on Sections 8-110 and 9-305.
5 Under draft 9-301(5), for chattel paper evidenced only by authoritative tangible copies,
6 perfection by possession and priority are governed by the law of the location of the tangible
7 copies. Perfection by filing continues to be governed by the law of the location of the debtor.

8 9 4. Money-related amendments

10
11 Section 1-201(b)(24) defines “money” as including “a medium of exchange currently
12 authorized or adopted by a domestic or foreign government” There is no way of knowing
13 how money in an intangible form might develop, but there are indications that some countries
14 might authorize or adopt intangible tokens as a medium of exchange and others might authorize
15 or adopt deposit accounts with a central bank as money.⁵ For many purposes, there is no need
16 for the UCC to distinguish among types of money. For Article 9 purposes, however, distinctions
17 must be drawn. Only tangible money is susceptible of perfection by possession. And the steps
18 needed for perfection by control with respect to intangible tokens, such as controllable electronic
19 records, will not work for deposit accounts with a central bank, and vice versa. For this reason,
20 the draft provides a new definition of “money” for purposes of Article 9 that expressly excludes
21 deposit accounts. Thus, “electronic money,” defined in draft § 9-102 as “money in an electronic
22 form,” would not include deposit accounts.

23
24 The existing Article 9 provisions governing “deposit accounts” would remain suitable for
25 accounts with a central bank, even if a government has adopted these accounts as money. The
26 draft makes no changes with respect to Article 9’s treatment of these accounts, aside from
27 distinguishing them from “money” and therefore from “electronic money.” Under the draft, a
28 security interest in electronic money as original collateral can be perfected only by control. The
29 requirements for obtaining control of electronic money are the same as those for obtaining
30 control of a controllable electronic record under draft Article 12.

31
32 The draft also makes changes to the take-free rules for transferees of money, including
33 the addition of a new rule applicable to electronic money, and transferees of funds from deposit
34 accounts.

35 36 **Section 9-102. Definitions and Index of Definitions.**

37 (a) [Article 9 definitions.] In this article:

38 * * *

⁵ These tokens or accounts sometimes are referred to as central bank digital currency or CBDC.

(2) “Account”, except as used in “account for”, “account to,” “account statement,” “customer’s account,” “on account of,” “statement of account,” and paragraph paragraphs (14) and (29), means a right to payment of a monetary obligation, whether or not earned by performance, (i) for property that has been or is to be sold, leased, licensed, assigned, or otherwise disposed of, (ii) for services rendered or to be rendered, (iii) for a policy of insurance issued or to be issued, (iv) for a secondary obligation incurred or to be incurred, (v) for energy provided or to be provided, (vi) for the use or hire of a vessel under a charter or other contract, (vii) arising out of the use of a credit or charge card or information contained on or for use with the card, or (viii) as winnings in a lottery or other game of chance operated or sponsored by a State, governmental unit of a State, or person licensed or authorized to operate the game by a State or governmental unit of a State. The term includes controllable accounts and health-care-insurance receivables. The term does not include (i) ~~rights to payment evidenced by chattel paper or an instrument,~~ chattel paper, (ii) commercial tort claims, (iii) deposit accounts, (iv) investment property, (v) letter-of-credit rights or letters of credit, ~~or~~ (vi) rights to payment for money or funds advanced or sold, other than rights arising out of the use of a credit or charge card or information contained on or for use with the ~~card.~~ card, or (vii) rights to payment evidenced by an instrument.

* * *

(6A) “Assignee” means a person:

(A) in whose favor a security interest that secures an obligation is created or provided for under a security agreement, whether or not an obligation to be secured is outstanding; or

(B) to which an account, chattel paper, payment intangible, or promissory note has been sold.

(6B) “Assignor” means a person that:

(A) under a security agreement creates or provides for a security interest that secures an obligation; or

(B) sells an account, chattel paper, payment intangible, or promissory note.

* * *

(11) “Chattel paper” ~~means a record or records that evidence both a monetary obligation and a security interest in specific goods, a security interest in specific goods and software used in the goods, a security interest in specific goods and license of software used in the goods, a lease of specific goods, or a lease of specific goods and license of software used in the goods. In this paragraph, “monetary obligation” means a monetary obligation secured by the goods or owed under a lease of the goods and includes a monetary obligation with respect to software used in the goods.~~ means:

(A) a right to payment of a monetary obligation secured ~~under a security agreement~~ by specific goods, if the right to payment and security agreement are evidenced by a record; or

(B) a right to payment of a monetary obligation owed by a lessee under a lease agreement with respect to specific goods and a monetary obligation owed by the lessee in connection with the transaction giving rise to the lease, if:

(i) the right to payment and lease agreement are evidenced by a record; and

1 (ii) the predominant purpose of the transaction giving rise to the
2 lease was to give the lessee the right to possession and use of the goods.

3 ~~The term does not include (i) charters or other contracts involving the use or hire of a vessel or~~
4 ~~(ii) records that evidence a right to payment arising out of the use of a credit or charge card or~~
5 ~~information contained on or for use with the card. If a transaction is evidenced by records that~~
6 ~~include an instrument or series of instruments, the group of records taken together constitutes~~
7 ~~chattel paper.~~

8 The term does not include (i) a right to payment arising out of a charter or other contract
9 involving the use or hire of a vessel or (ii) a right to payment arising out of the use of a credit or
10 charge card or information contained on or for use with the card.

11 * * *

12 (27A) “Controllable account” means an account evidenced by a controllable
13 electronic record that provides that the account debtor undertakes to pay the person that under
14 Section 12-105 has control of the controllable electronic record.

15 (27B) “Controllable payment intangible” means a payment intangible evidenced
16 by a controllable electronic record that provides that the account debtor undertakes to pay the
17 person that under Section 12-105 has control of the controllable electronic record.

18 * * *

19 (29) “Deposit account” means a demand, time, savings, passbook, or similar
20 account maintained with a bank. The term does not include investment property or accounts
21 evidenced by an instrument.

22 * * *

23 (31A) “Electronic money” means money in an electronic form.

1 * * *

2 (47) “Instrument” means a negotiable instrument or any other writing that
3 evidences a right to the payment of a monetary obligation, is not itself a security agreement or
4 lease, and is of a type that in ordinary course of business is transferred by delivery with any
5 necessary indorsement or assignment. The term does not include (i) investment property, (ii)
6 letters of credit, ~~or~~ (iii) writings that evidence a right to payment arising out of the use of a credit
7 or charge card or information contained on or for use with the card, or (iv) writings that evidence
8 chattel paper.

9 * * *

10 (54A) “Money” has the meaning provided in Section 1-201(24), but does not
11 include a deposit account.

12 * * *

13 (61) “Payment intangible” means a general intangible under which the account
14 debtor’s principal obligation is a monetary obligation. The term includes a controllable payment
15 intangible.

16 * * *

17 (64) “Proceeds”, except as used in Section 9-609(b), means the following
18 property:

19 (A) whatever is acquired upon the sale, lease, license, exchange, or other
20 disposition of collateral;

21 (B) whatever is collected on, or distributed on account of, collateral;

22 (C) rights arising out of collateral;

(D) to the extent of the value of collateral, claims arising out of the loss, nonconformity, or interference with the use of, defects or infringement of rights in, or damage to, the collateral; or

(E) to the extent of the value of collateral and to the extent payable to the debtor or the secured party, insurance payable by reason of the loss or nonconformity of, defects or infringement of rights in, or damage to, the collateral.

* * *

(79A) “Tangible money” means money in a tangible form.

(b) [Definitions in other articles.] The following definitions in other articles apply to this article:

* * *

“Controllable electronic record” Section 12-102.

* * *

“Qualifying purchaser” Section 12-102.

* * *

Legislative Note: Replicate the formatting of the tabulated material in subsection (a)(11) exactly to ensure that the meaning of the material is preserved.

Official Comment

* * *

5. Receivables-related Definitions.

* * *

b. ~~“Chattel Paper”; “Electronic Chattel Paper”; “Tangible Chattel Paper.” “Chattel paper” consists of a monetary obligation together with a security interest in or a lease of specific goods if the obligation and security interest or lease are evidenced by “a record or records.” The definition has been expanded from that found in former Article 9 to include records that evidence a monetary obligation and a security interest in specific goods and software used in the goods, a~~

1 security interest in specific goods and license of software used in the goods, or a lease of specific
2 goods and license of software used in the goods. The expanded definition covers transactions in
3 which the debtor's or lessee's monetary obligation includes amounts owed with respect to
4 software used in the goods. The monetary obligation with respect to the software need not be
5 owed under a license from the secured party or lessor, and the secured party or lessor need not be
6 a party to the license transaction itself. Among the types of monetary obligations that are
7 included in "chattel paper" are amounts that have been advanced by the secured party or lessor to
8 enable the debtor or lessee to acquire or obtain financing for a license of the software used in the
9 goods. The definition also makes clear that rights to payment arising out of credit card
10 transactions are not chattel paper. "Chattel paper" consists of a monetary obligation that is either
11 secured by specific goods or arises in connection with a lease of specific goods. The term also
12 includes a monetary obligation and a security interest in specific goods and software used in the
13 goods, a security interest in specific goods and license of software used in the goods, or a lease
14 of specific goods and license of software used in the goods. The term covers transactions in
15 which the debtor's or lessee's monetary obligation includes amounts owed with respect to
16 software used in the goods. The monetary obligation with respect to the software need not be
17 owed under a license from the secured party or lessor, and the secured party or lessor need not be
18 a party to the license transaction itself. The monetary obligation itself need not relate to the
19 goods. For example, a loan secured by specific goods and evidenced by one or more records
20 creates chattel paper regardless of the purpose of the loan.

21
22 What distinguishes chattel paper from other rights to payment is the fact that creditor has
23 an interest in specific goods to enforce the right to payment. The fact that the creditor also has an
24 interest in other property does not necessarily prevent the right to payment from being chattel
25 paper.

26
27 **Example 8.** To secure a loan, Borrower grants Lender a security interest in a specified
28 item of equipment and a deposit account. The loan and the security interest are evidenced
29 by one or more records. The right to payment is chattel paper.

30
31 In Example 8, the inclusion of some incidental collateral, such as a deposit account, does not
32 disallow characterization of the right to payment as chattel paper. Another typical example
33 would be the inclusion of after-acquired replacement parts to be installed on the specific goods.
34 On the other hand, to be chattel paper, a right to payment must be accompanied by a security
35 interest in *specific* goods or a lease of *specific* goods. A right to payment secured by a security
36 interest in rotating collateral is not chattel paper.

37
38 **Example 9.** To secure a loan, Borrower grants Lender a security interest in all of
39 Borrower's existing and after-acquired inventory. The loan and the security interest are
40 evidenced by one or more records. The right to payment is not chattel paper.

41
42 **Example 10.** To secure a loan, Borrower grants Lender a security interest in a
43 specifically described item of equipment and also in all of Borrower's existing and after-
44 acquired equipment. The loan and the security interest are evidenced by one or more
45 records. The right to payment is not chattel paper.

1 Example 9 is the easy case. As to Example 10, it is true that the monetary obligation is secured
2 by “specific goods” and the definition of chattel paper does not specify that the obligation must
3 be secured *only* by specific goods. However, if the right to payment in Example 10 were to be
4 characterized as chattel paper, it would be possible to convert virtually any monetary obligation
5 evidenced by records and secured by any collateral into chattel paper merely by including as
6 collateral a specific item of goods (whether inventory, equipment, consumer goods, or farm
7 products). The special rules for chattel paper contemplate reliance on specific goods as the
8 primary collateral or subject of the lease, even if some incidental property also might be
9 included. If the inclusion of additional goods or other property indicate that primary reliance is
10 not on the specific goods, then classification as chattel paper would not be appropriate. Of
11 course, there may be close cases. In those situations, parties should take appropriate precautions.

12
13 A right to payment arising from a lease of specific goods gives rise to chattel paper only
14 if the predominant purpose of the transaction is to provide the lessee the right to possession and
15 use of the goods. Therefore, under paragraph (11)(B)(ii), when a lease of specific goods is
16 combined with an obligation to provide or right to receive other property or services, the
17 resulting right to payment will be chattel paper only if the goods aspect of the transaction
18 predominates.

19
20 **Example 1011.** In one or more authenticated records, Customer and Car Dealer enter into
21 a transaction pursuant to which, in exchange for a payment of \$2,000 per month:
22 (i) Customer is entitled to possession of a specific vehicle for 36 months; (ii) Car Dealer
23 will provide round-the-clock monitoring of the vehicle’s location and condition, and alert
24 authorities to provide road-side assistance in the event of a malfunction or accident; and
25 (iii) Car Dealer will, from time to time, remotely update the vehicle’s automobile’s
26 operating system. The value of the right to possess and use the vehicle is significantly
27 greater than the value of the monitoring service and updates. Because the goods aspect of
28 the transaction predominates, Customer’s monetary obligation, including the portion
29 attributable to Car Dealer’s obligation to provide monitoring and updates, constitutes
30 chattel paper.

31
32 **Example 1112.** In one or more authenticated records, Customer and Cableco enter into a
33 transaction pursuant to which, in exchange for a payment of \$200 per month, Cableco
34 will provide Customer with specified television programming and a device needed to
35 access the programming (a “lease” of the device). If the components of the transaction
36 were priced separately, the price for the programming would be nine times the price for
37 possession and use of the device. Because the goods aspect of this transaction does not
38 predominate, Customer’s monetary obligation does not constitute chattel paper.

39
40 Charters of vessels are expressly excluded from the definition of chattel paper; they are
41 accounts. The term “charter” as used in this section includes bareboat charters, time charters,
42 successive voyage charters, contracts of affreightment, contracts of carriage, and all other
43 arrangements for the use of vessels.

44
45 ~~Under former Section 9-105, only if the evidence of an obligation consisted of “a writing~~
46 ~~or writings” could an obligation qualify as chattel paper. In this Article, traditional, written~~

1 chattel paper is included in the definition of “tangible chattel paper.” “Electronic chattel paper”
2 is chattel paper that is stored in an electronic medium instead of in tangible form. The concept of
3 an electronic medium should be construed liberally to include electrical, digital, magnetic,
4 optical, electromagnetic, or any other current or similar emerging technologies.
5

6 The latest revision to the definition of “chattel paper” changed the language from “a
7 record or records that evidence a monetary obligation” to “a right to payment of a monetary
8 obligation . . . evidenced by a record.” This semantic change was for clarification purposes only;
9 it does not imply a change in meaning. Chattel paper is and has always been a right to payment
10 of a monetary obligation. Because the revised definition is based on the obligation, rather than
11 the record, the definition no longer includes the following statement, which was previously part
12 of the definition: “If a transaction is evidenced by records that include an instrument or series of
13 instruments, the group of records taken together constitutes chattel paper.” The omission of that
14 statement also does not imply a change in meaning, except that records (writings) evidencing
15 chattel paper are excluded from the definition of “instrument” under draft § 9-102(a)(47).
16 Although the definition refers to “a record,” chattel paper can be evidenced by one or more
17 records because, under Section 1-106, unless the statutory context otherwise requires, words in
18 the singular number include the plural.
19

20 Reporter’s Note

21
22 1. “*Account.*” The draft redefines “chattel paper” to mean a right to payment rather than
23 a record evidencing a right to payment. The amendments to the definition of “account” reflect
24 the redefinition. The definition also includes a new exception for the use of the term in the
25 definition of “deposit account.”
26

27 2. “*Assignor*”; “*assignee*”. Instead of referring to a “debtor,” “secured party,” and
28 “security interest,” all of which terms are defined in the UCC, several provisions of Article 9,
29 including Part 4, refer to an “assignor,” “assignee,” and “assignment,” or sometimes an
30 “assigned contract,” none of which terms are defined in the UCC. Some courts read the
31 undefined terms in an unduly narrow way. In 2020, the Permanent Editorial Board for the UCC
32 issued a Commentary clarifying the meanings of these terms and amended the official comments
33 accordingly. *PEB Commentary No. 21, Use of the Term “Assignment” in Article 9 of the*
34 *Uniform Commercial Code* (Mar. 11, 2020). New subsections (6A) and (6B) incorporate the
35 essence of the Commentary into the statutory text.
36

37 3. “*Chattel paper.*” Under the revised definition, “chattel paper” is a right to payment
38 rather than a record evidencing a right to payment. Records evidencing chattel paper remain
39 relevant to perfection of a security interest in chattel paper. *See* draft § 9-314A.
40

41 The right to payment that constitutes “chattel paper” under subsection (a)(11)(B) may
42 include the right to payment of a variety of “bundled” or “hybrid” monetary obligations owed by
43 a lessee of specific goods. These obligations may include obligations arising in connection with
44 the transaction giving rise to the lease, such as obligations for software or services. However, to
45 constitute “chattel paper,” these obligations must include the right to payment of a monetary
46 obligation owed by the lessee under the lease agreement.

1 A right to payment is not “chattel paper” under subsection (a)(11)(B) unless the
2 predominant purpose of the transaction giving rise to the lease was to give the lessee the right to
3 possession and use of the goods. The draft official comment explains the predominant-purpose
4 test and gives examples of its application.
5

6 4. “*Controllable account*”; “*controllable payment intangible*.” The draft affords special
7 treatment to security interests in controllable accounts and controllable payment intangibles, *i.e.*,
8 those accounts and payment intangibles that are evidenced by a controllable electronic record
9 that provides that the account debtor (obligor) undertakes to pay the person having control of the
10 controllable electronic record. (Of course, a person would be an account debtor only if it were
11 actually obligated on the underlying account or payment intangible.) An undertaking to pay the
12 “person that has control” means an undertaking to pay the person that has control at the time
13 payment is made. An undertaking to pay Smith, who happens to have control of the relevant
14 controllable electronic record at the time the undertaking was made, is not an undertaking to pay
15 the person that has control.
16

17 This special treatment includes the following:
18

- 19 • Perfection of a security interest in a controllable account or controllable payment
20 intangible can be achieved by filing a financing statement or obtaining control of the
21 controllable electronic record that evidences the controllable account or controllable
22 payment intangible. Draft §§ 9-312(a); 9-314(a); 9-107A(b).
23
- 24 • A security interest in a controllable electronic record, controllable account, or
25 controllable payment intangible that is perfected by control has priority over a
26 conflicting security interest that is perfected by another method. Draft § 9-326A.
27
- 28 • The benefit of the take-free and no-action rules for qualifying purchasers (including
29 secured parties) of controllable electronic records also extends to qualifying
30 purchasers of controllable accounts and controllable payment intangibles, whether or
31 not the qualifying purchaser also purchases the related controllable electronic record.
32 See draft § 12-104(a) and Reporter’s Notes 6 and 7.
33

34 5. “*Deposit account*.” This definition is not changed and is provided here for
35 convenience of reference.
36

37 6. “*Electronic money*” and “*tangible money*.” As the Reporter’s Prefatory Note to
38 Article 9 Amendments observes, some countries may authorize or adopt intangible tokens as a
39 medium of exchange that would be “money” as defined (and as proposed to be defined) in both
40 Article 1 and Article 9. Such intangible tokens would be “electronic money” as defined in draft §
41 9-102(a)(31A). Under the draft, a security interest in electronic money as original collateral can
42 be perfected only by control. Draft §§ 9-105A; 9-312(b)(4). The requirements for obtaining
43 control of electronic money are essentially the same as those for obtaining control of a
44 controllable electronic record under draft Article 12. The definition of “tangible money” uses the
45 word “tangible” with its normal meaning (as something that does have physical or corporeal
46 existence, such as goods).

1 7. *“Instrument.”* The change to the definition of “instrument” makes it clear that the
2 definition excludes an instrument that is a record included in the definition of “chattel paper.”
3 Note that while in many places in the UCC the term “writing” has been and is proposed to be
4 replaced by the technology neutral term, “record,” instruments (under both Articles 3 and 9)
5 must be “written” and in “writing.”
6

7 8. *Money and deposit accounts under Article 9.* As observed in the Reporter’s Prefatory
8 Note to Article 9 Amendments, some countries may authorize or adopt deposit accounts with a
9 central bank as a form of “money,” as defined in Section 1-201(b)(24) (and as that definition is
10 proposed to be revised in the draft). However, the existing Article 9 provisions governing
11 “deposit accounts” would remain suitable for such accounts with a central bank, even if a
12 government has adopted these accounts as money. The draft makes no changes with respect to
13 Article 9’s treatment of deposit accounts. However, *for purposes of Article 9* and in the interest
14 of clarity, the definition of “money” in draft § 9-102(a)(31A) excludes deposit accounts. Under
15 this definition, deposit accounts would not be money for Article 9 purposes even if they were to
16 become money under the Article 1 definition.
17

18 The principal function of the Article 9 definition of “money” is to ensure that even if
19 some deposit accounts were to become “money” as defined in Article 1, the provisions relating
20 to perfection and priority for security interests in deposit accounts, and not those for money, will
21 apply. It will be necessary to ensure that this definitional strategy does not cause any difficulties
22 for other provisions of Article 9, such as references to the cognate term “monetary.” The current
23 thinking is that this will not be problematic.
24

25 9. *Proceeds.*
26

27 a. *No change to definition of proceeds.* No change to the definition of “proceeds” is
28 proposed and the definition is provided here for convenience of reference.
29

30 b. *“Fork” involving controllable electronic record.* Sometimes there occurs a change in
31 the software (code) of a system (sometimes referred to as a “protocol” or “platform”) in which a
32 controllable electronic record is recorded. When such a change occurs in a blockchain platform,
33 the blockchain may remain intact, no new blockchain may result, and the change sometimes is
34 colloquially referred to as a “soft fork.” If such a change results in a new, separate blockchain
35 that exists alongside the original blockchain and a new controllable electronic record is created,
36 the change is sometimes referred to as a “hard fork.” But the terms “fork,” “soft fork,” and “hard
37 fork” are ambiguous and not used consistently. Even in a hard fork situation the pre-fork
38 controllable electronic record typically would remain intact (although its value might be
39 affected). However, a person in control of the original record may not automatically obtain
40 control of a new record. Additional steps may be required for the person in control to claim and
41 obtain control of the new record.
42

43 c. *New controllable electronic record as proceeds.* Depending on the nature and structure
44 of the fork, a new controllable electronic record arising under a hard fork may be property
45 “distributed on account of” the original record or “rights arising out of” the original record,
46 thereby constituting proceeds of the original record under subparagraph (B) or (C), or both, of

1 the definition of “proceeds.” If the new record is “proceeds,” then the rules on attachment,
2 perfection, priority under Sections 9-203(f), 9-315, and 9-322 would apply. If a security interest
3 in the original record is perfected by control, the creation of the new record in connection with a
4 hard fork typically results in the secured party obtaining control (or having the opportunity to
5 obtain control) of the new record. If that is not the case and perfection of the security interest in
6 the original record is only by control, however, then perfection would continue in the new record
7 only until the 21st day after the security interest attaches to the new record, unless one of the
8 exceptions under subsection (d) applies. Section 9-315(c), (d). For this reason, a secured party
9 may wish to perfect its security interest by filing so that the perfection would continue thereafter
10 in any proceeds under Section 9-315(d)(1). A secured party that does so may, to ensure the
11 priority of its perfected security interest, also wish to consider obtaining a release or
12 subordination from any earlier filed secured party whose financing statement covers the same
13 type of property. Even if that is achieved, a security interest in the record that is later perfected
14 by control would have priority over a security interest perfected by filing. Draft § 9-326A.

15
16 d. *“Airdrops” of controllable electronic records.* New controllable electronic records also
17 may be provided to persons in control of existing records by way of an “airdrop” that does not
18 involve a fork in an existing blockchain. Depending on the circumstances, these new records
19 may or may not be proceeds of the existing, original record.

20
21 e. *New controllable electronic record as financial asset credited to securities account.* If
22 the original record were a financial asset credited to a securities account, the new record might
23 become proceeds of a security entitlement for the reasons described in Note 9.c. Because the
24 securities intermediary (and not the entitlement holder) in such a situation presumably would
25 have control of the original record, the question sometimes arises as to whether the intermediary
26 has any duty to obtain or maintain control of the new record for the benefit of its entitlement
27 holder (and indirectly for the benefit of the holder of a security interest in the security
28 entitlement). The Drafting Committee has not yet considered that issue.

29
30 * * *

31 **Section 9-104. Control of Deposit Account.**

32 (a) **[Requirements for control.]** A secured party has control of a deposit account if:

33 (1) the secured party is the bank with which the deposit account is maintained;

34 (2) the debtor, secured party, and bank have agreed in an authenticated record that

35 the bank will comply with instructions originated by the secured party directing disposition of
36 the funds in the deposit account without further consent by the debtor;~~or~~

37 (3) the secured party becomes the bank’s customer with respect to the deposit
38 account;or

1 (4) another person, other than the debtor:

2 (A) has control of the deposit account and acknowledges that it has control
3 on behalf of the secured party; or

4 (B) obtains control of the deposit account after having acknowledged that
5 it will obtain control of the deposit account on behalf of the secured party.

6 **(b) [Debtor’s right to direct disposition.]** A secured party that has satisfied subsection
7 (a) has control, even if the debtor retains the right to direct the disposition of funds from the
8 deposit account.

9 **Reporter’s Note**

10 1. Control on behalf of another person. Draft subsection (a)(4) provides for a secured
11 party to obtain control of a deposit account by virtue of the acknowledgment by another person,
12 other than the debtor, in control of the deposit account.~~It~~

13
14 a. Subsection (a)(4) follows draft revisions to the corresponding provisions for
15 control of electronic documents of title (draft § 7-106), control of deposit accounts (draft § 9-
16 104, control of an electronic copy of a record evidencing chattel paper (draft § 9-105), control of
17 electronic money (draft § 9-105A), and control of controllable electronic records (draft § 12-
18 105). For a brief discussion, see draft § 12-105, Reporter’s Note 78.

19
20 b. An acknowledgment by a person in control under subsection (a)(4) would not
21 impose any duties on the bank with which the deposit account is maintained and the official
22 comments will make this clear. Indeed, the bank may have no knowledge or involvement
23 whatsoever with a control person’s acknowledgment under that subsection.

24
25 c. Subsection (a)(4) should not be construed to permit the bank with which the
26 deposit account is maintained to short-circuit subsection (a)(2), which provides for control
27 through a control agreement between the bank and the control person. However, it would be
28 possible for the bank, acting in a capacity other than as the depository bank (for example, as a
29 secured party) to acknowledge that it has control on behalf of another purchaser under subsection
30 (a)(4).

31
32 d. Draft § 9-107B(a) makes clear that a person that has control under this section
33 has no duty to acknowledge that it has or will obtain control on behalf of another person.
34 Arrangements for a person to acknowledge that it has or will obtain control on behalf of another
35 person are not standardized. Accordingly, draft Section 9-107B(b) leaves to the agreement of the
36 parties and to any other applicable law any duties of a person that does acknowledge that it has

1 or will obtain control on behalf of another person and provides that a person making an
2 acknowledgment is not required to confirm the acknowledgment to another person.
3

4 **Section 9-105. Control of Electronic Chattel Paper.**

5 (a) ~~[General rule: control of electronic chattel paper.]~~ A secured party has control of
6 electronic chattel paper if a system employed for evidencing the transfer of interests in the
7 chattel paper reliably establishes the secured party as the person to which the chattel paper was
8 assigned.

9 (b) ~~[Specific facts giving control.]~~ A system satisfies subsection (a) if the record or
10 records comprising the chattel paper are created, stored, and assigned in such a manner that:

11 (1) a single authoritative copy of the record or records exists which is unique,
12 identifiable, and, except as otherwise provided in paragraphs (4), (5), and (6), unalterable;

13 (2) the authoritative copy identifies the secured party as the assignee of the record
14 or records;

15 (3) the authoritative copy is communicated to and maintained by the secured party
16 or its designated custodian;

17 (4) copies or amendments that add or change an identified assignee of the
18 authoritative copy can be made only with the consent of the secured party;

19 (5) each copy of the authoritative copy and any copy of a copy is readily
20 identifiable as a copy that is not the authoritative copy; and

21 (6) any amendment of the authoritative copy is readily identifiable as authorized
22 or unauthorized.

23 **Section 9-105. Control of Electronic Copy of Record Evidencing Chattel Paper.**

24 ~~H~~(a) [General rule: control of electronic copy of record evidencing chattel paper.] A
25 purchaser has control of each authoritative electronic copy of a record evidencing chattel paper if

1 a system employed for evidencing the ~~[transfer]~~[assignment] of interests in the chattel paper
2 reliably establishes the purchaser as the person to which the chattel paper was
3 ~~[transferred]~~[assigned].

4 (b) ~~[Specific facts giving control.] A.]~~**[Single authoritative copy.]** A system satisfies
5 subsection (a) if the record or records ~~comprising~~ evidencing the chattel paper are created,
6 stored, and assigned in such a manner that:

7 (1) a single authoritative copy of the record or records exists which is unique,
8 identifiable, and, except as otherwise provided in paragraphs (4), (5), and (6), unalterable;

9 (2) the authoritative copy identifies the ~~secured party~~ purchaser as the assignee of
10 the record or records;

11 (3) the authoritative copy is communicated to and maintained by the ~~secured party~~
12 purchaser or its designated custodian;

13 (4) copies or amendments that add or change an identified assignee of the
14 authoritative copy can be made only with the consent of the ~~secured party~~ purchaser;

15 (5) each copy of the authoritative copy and any copy of a copy is readily
16 identifiable as a copy that is not the authoritative copy; and

17 (6) any amendment of the authoritative copy is readily identifiable as authorized
18 or unauthorized.

19 (c) **[One or more authoritative copies.]** A system satisfies subsection (a) and a
20 purchaser has control of an electronic copy of a record evidencing chattel paper if:

21 (1) the electronic copy, a record attached to or logically associated with the
22 electronic copy, or a system in which the electronic copy is recorded:

1 (A) enables the ~~purchaser person~~ readily to identify each electronic copy
2 as an authoritative copy or nonauthoritative copy;

3 (B) enables the purchaser readily to identify itself in any way, including
4 by name, identifying number, cryptographic key, office, or account number, as the assignee of
5 each authoritative electronic copy; and

6 (C) gives the purchaser exclusive power, subject to ~~subsections (e) and~~
7 ~~subsection (d)~~, to:

8 (i) prevent others from ~~[adding to or changing]~~ ~~[altering]~~ an
9 identified assignee of each authoritative electronic copy; and

10 (ii) transfer control of ~~the each~~ authoritative electronic copy; or

11 (2) another person, other than the debtor:

12 (A) has control of ~~the each authoritative~~ electronic copy and acknowledges
13 that it has control on behalf of the purchaser; or

14 (B) obtains control of ~~the each authoritative~~ electronic copy after having
15 acknowledged that it will obtain control of the electronic copy on behalf of the purchaser.

16 ~~(c) [Exception for single authoritative electronic copy of record evidencing chattel~~
17 ~~paper.] This subsection applies if a single, unique, and identifiable authoritative electronic copy~~
18 ~~of a record evidencing chattel paper exists. The requirements of subsection (b)(1)(C) are satisfied~~
19 ~~if the [addition to or change] [alteration] of an identified assignee of the authoritative electronic~~
20 ~~copy [can] [may] be made only with the consent of the secured party.~~

21 ~~(d)~~ (c) [Meaning of exclusive.] A power is exclusive under subsection (b)(1)(C),
22 even if:

(1) the electronic copy, a record attached to or logically associated with the electronic copy, or a system in which the electronic copy is recorded limits the use of the electronic record or has a protocol programmed to cause a change, including a transfer or loss of control; or

(2) the secured party has agreed to share purchaser shares the power with another person.

Reporter's Note

1. *The function of control.* Under the draft, as under current law, a secured party can perfect a security interest in chattel paper by filing. *See* Section 9-312(a). Alternatively, a secured party can perfect a security interest in chattel paper by taking possession of all authoritative tangible copies of the record evidencing the chattel paper and obtaining control of all authoritative electronic copies. *See* draft § 9-314A. Possession and control also are conditions for achieving priority under draft § 9-330(a), (b), and (c).

2. *Conditions for obtaining control.* As explained in the preceding Note, control relates to perfection of a security interest in chattel paper. One method of perfecting a security interest in chattel paper is to take possession of all tangible authoritative copies of the record evidencing the chattel paper and obtain control of all electronic records. Perfection generally serves the function of enabling the public to determine that the asset in question (here, chattel paper) may be encumbered with a security interest.

The amended definition of “control” is Subsections (a) and (b) are substantially unchanged. (The amendments to subsection (a) primarily reflect the changes to the definition of chattel paper in Section 9-102.) It is important to note that compliance with the new conditions for control in subsection (c) would satisfy the conditions provided in subsection (b). However, subsection (b) has been retained out of an abundance of caution and to provide assurances that existing systems for control of electronic chattel paper under current law will continue to be viable after the draft revisions become effective.

The revised conditions for of “control” provided in subsection (c) are meant to reflect the functions that possession serves with respect to writings in a more accurate and technologically flexible way than does the current definition.

To show that it has possession of all tangible authoritative copies of a record evidencing chattel paper, a secured party purchaser can produce the copies in its possession and provide evidence that these are authoritative copies. The secured party purchaser need not prove that no other tangible authoritative copies exist. *See* draft § 12-105, Reporter's Note 8. (The Reporter's Note to draft § 9-314A explains the meaning of “authoritative copy.”) The secured party's purchaser's possession of the tangible authoritative copies gives the secured party purchaser the

1 power to prevent others from taking possession of the copies and to transfer possession of the
2 copies.

3
4 Under ~~the draft, subsection (c),~~ to obtain control of an electronic copy of a record
5 evidencing chattel paper a secured party purchaser must be able to identify each electronic copy
6 as authoritative or nonauthoritative and identify itself as the assignee of each authoritative copy.
7 In addition, the secured party purchaser must have the exclusive power to prevent others from
8 adding or changing an identified assignee and to transfer control of the authoritative copies.
9

10 The utility of distributed ledger technology (including blockchain technology) depends
11 on there being multiple authoritative copies of a record. The safe harbor under existing Section
12 9-105(b) contemplates a “single authoritative copy” and so is unavailable when the relevant
13 record is maintained on a blockchain or other distributed ledger. ~~The draft Subsection (c)~~ allows
14 a secured party purchaser to obtain control when there are multiple authoritative copies.
15

16 ~~3. Use of singular. The draft refers to “record” and “copy.” In any given case, there may
17 be more than one relevant record and more than one copy. Under Section 1-106, unless the
18 statutory context otherwise requires, words in the singular number include the plural.~~
19

20 ~~4. Control on behalf of another person.~~
21

22 a. Draft subsection (b)(2) provides for a secured partypurchaser to obtain control
23 of an electronic copy by virtue of the acknowledgment by another person in control of the
24 electronic copy. It follows draft revisions to the corresponding provisions for control of
25 electronic documents of title (draft § 7-106), control of deposit accounts (draft § 9-104), control
26 of electronic money (draft § 9-105A), and control of controllable electronic records (draft § 12-
27 105). For a brief discussion, see draft § 12-105, Reporter’s Note 78.
28

29 ~~5. Accommodation of systems for control under existing Section 9-105. Subsections (a)~~
30 ~~and (c) are intended to ensure that systems for control of electronic chattel paper under existing~~
31 ~~Section 9-105 will also provide for control under the draft subsection (b). Subsection (a) appears~~
32 ~~in square brackets to indicate that it may not be necessary. It appears that existing systems rely~~
33 ~~on the “safe harbor” of existing subsection (b) and not on the general rule under subsection (a).~~
34 ~~With one potential exception, control of electronic chattel paper under an existing system that~~
35 ~~complies with existing subsection (b) would also satisfy the requirements for control under the~~
36 ~~draft subsection (b). Subsection (c) provides for this exception.~~
37

38 ~~6. Application of section~~ b. Draft § 9-107B(a) makes clear that a person that
39 has control under this section has no duty to acknowledge that it has or will obtain control on
40 behalf of another person. Arrangements for a person to acknowledge that it has or will obtain
41 control on behalf of another person are not standardized. Accordingly, draft Section 9-107B(b)
42 leaves to the agreement of the parties and to any other applicable law any duties of a person that
43 does acknowledge that it has or will obtain control on behalf of another person and provides that
44 a person making an acknowledgment is not required to confirm the acknowledgment to another
45 person.
46

1 4. References to “secured party” changed to “purchaser.” References to a “secured
2 party” in this section have been changed to refer to a “purchaser.” This ~~conforms~~change aligns
3 the ~~terminology to text with the priority rules of~~ Section 9-330, ~~which conditions non-temporal~~
4 ~~priority on a “purchaser” obtaining control under this section. This is not a substantive change.~~
5 ~~See Section 330(a), (b), (c), and (f).~~

6
7 * * *

8 **Section 9-105A. Control of Electronic Money.**

9 **(a) [General rule: control of electronic money.]** A person has control of electronic
10 money if:

11 (1) the electronic money, a record attached to or logically associated with the
12 electronic money, or a system in which the electronic money is recorded gives the person:

13 (A) the power to avail itself of substantially all the benefit from the
14 electronic money; and

15 (B) exclusive power, subject to subsection (b), to:

16 (i) prevent others from availing themselves of substantially all the
17 benefit from the electronic money; and

18 (ii) transfer control of the electronic money to another person or
19 cause another person to obtain control of other electronic money as a result of the transfer of the
20 electronic money; and

21 (2) the electronic money, a record attached to or logically associated with the
22 electronic money, or a system in which the electronic money is recorded enables the person
23 readily to identify itself in any way, including by name, identifying number, cryptographic key,
24 office, or account number, as having the powers under paragraph (1).

25 **(b) [Control through another person.]** A person has control of electronic money if
26 another person, other than the transferor of an interest in the electronic money:

(1) has control of the electronic money and acknowledges that it has control on behalf of the person, or

(2) obtains control of the electronic money after having acknowledged that it will obtain control of the electronic money on behalf of the person.

(c) [Meaning of exclusive.] A power is exclusive under subsection (a)(1)(B), even if:

(1) the electronic money, a record attached to or logically associated with the electronic money, or a system in which the electronic money is recorded limits the use of the electronic money or has a protocol programmed to cause a change, including a transfer or loss of control; or

(2) the person ~~has agreed to share~~**shares** the power with another person.

Reporter's Note

1. “*Control.*” A security interest in electronic money as original collateral may be perfected only by control as provided in this section. See draft § 9-312(b)(4). The requirements for obtaining control track those in draft § 12-105. *See Reporter’s Note to draft § 12-105.*

2. Control on behalf of another person.

a. Draft subsection (b) provides for a person to obtain control of electronic money by virtue of the acknowledgment by another person in control of the electronic copy. It follows draft revisions to the corresponding provisions for control of electronic documents of title (draft § 7-106), control of deposit accounts (draft § 9-104), control of an electronic copy of a record evidencing chattel paper (draft § 9-105, and control of controllable electronic records (draft § 12-105). For a brief discussion, see draft § 12-105, Reporter’s Note 8.

b. Draft § 9-107B(a) makes clear that a person that has control under this section has no duty to acknowledge that it has or will obtain control on behalf of another person. Arrangements for a person to acknowledge that it has or will obtain control on behalf of another person are not standardized. Accordingly, draft Section 9-107B(b) leaves to the agreement of the parties and to any other applicable law any duties of a person that does acknowledge that it has or will obtain control on behalf of another person and provides that a person making an acknowledgment is not required to confirm the acknowledgment to another person.

* * *

Section 9-107A. Control of Controllable Electronic Record, Controllable

1 **Account, or Controllable Payment Intangible.**

2 (a) **[Control under Section 12-105.]** A secured party has control of a controllable
3 electronic record as provided in Section 12-105.

4 (b) **[Control of controllable account and controllable payment intangible.]** A secured
5 party has control of a controllable account or controllable payment intangible if the secured party
6 has control of the controllable electronic record that evidences the controllable account or
7 controllable payment intangible.

8 **Reporter's Note**
9

10 1. *Control of controllable electronic records.* This draft provides for perfection by filing
11 and perfection by control as alternative methods of perfection with respect to a controllable
12 electronic record. See draft §§ 9-312 and 9-314. Under draft § 9-107A(a), a secured party has
13 control of a controllable electronic record as provided in draft § 12-105. Under draft § 9-326A, a
14 security interest in a controllable electronic record that is perfected by control has priority over a
15 security interest perfected by another method.

16 2. *Control of controllable account or controllable payment intangible.* This draft
17 provides for perfection by filing and perfection by control as alternative methods of perfection
18 with respect to a controllable account or controllable payment intangible. See draft §§ 9-312, 9-
19 314. Under draft § 9-107A(a), a secured party would obtain control of a controllable account or
20 controllable payment intangible by obtaining control of the related controllable electronic record.
21 Under draft § 9-326A, a security interest in a controllable account or controllable payment
22 intangible that is perfected by control would have priority over a security interest perfected by
23 another method.
24

25
26 By definition, a controllable account would be an Article 9 “account,” and a controllable
27 payment intangible would be an Article 9 “payment intangible.” Draft § 9-102. The fact that an
28 account or payment intangible is a controllable account or controllable payment intangible does
29 not affect a secured party’s alternative method of perfection, *i.e.*, filing. Moreover, that fact does
30 not affect the applicability of other provisions of Article 9, including the provisions governing an
31 account debtor’s agreement not to assert defenses (Section 9-403) and the statutory overrides of
32 legal and contractual restrictions on the assignability of accounts and payment intangibles
33 (Sections 9-406 and 9-408).
34

35 * * *

36
37 **Section 9-107B. No Requirement to Acknowledge or Confirm; No Duties.**

1 (a) [No requirement to acknowledge.] A person that has control under Section 9-104, 9-
2 105, or 9-105A is not required to acknowledge that it has or will obtain control on behalf of
3 another person.

4 (b) [No duties or confirmation.] If a person acknowledges that it has or will obtain
5 control on behalf of another person, unless the person otherwise agrees or law other than this
6 article otherwise provides, the person does not owe any duty to the other person and is not
7 required to confirm the acknowledgment to another person.

8 * * *

9
10 **Reporter's Note**

11
12 1. Source of these provisions. Draft § 9-107B derives from Section 9-313(f) and (g).

13
14 2. Purpose. Subsection (a) makes clear that a person that has control under the specified
15 sections has no duty to acknowledge that it has or will obtain control on behalf of another person.
16 Arrangements for a person to acknowledge that it has control on behalf of another person are not
17 standardized. Accordingly, subsection (b) leaves to the agreement of the parties and to any other
18 applicable law any duties of a person that does acknowledge that it has or will obtain control on
19 behalf of another person.

20
21 * * *

22
23 **Section 9-203. Attachment and Enforceability of Security Interest; Proceeds;**
24 **Supporting Obligations; Formal Requisites.**

25 * * *

26 (b) **[Enforceability.]** Except as otherwise provided in subsections (c) through (i), a
27 security interest is enforceable against the debtor and third parties with respect to the collateral
28 only if:

29 (1) value has been given;

30 (2) the debtor has rights in the collateral or the power to transfer rights in the
31 collateral to a secured party; and

(3) one of the following conditions is met:

* * *

(C) the collateral is a certificated security in registered form and the security certificate has been delivered to the secured party under Section 8-301 pursuant to the debtor's security agreement; ~~or~~

(D) the collateral is controllable accounts, controllable electronic records, controllable payment intangibles, deposit accounts, ~~electronic chattel paper, electronic documents, electronic money,~~ investment property, or letter-of-credit rights, ~~or electronic documents,~~ and the secured party has control under Section 7-106, 9-104, 9-105A, 9-106, ~~or~~ 9-107, or 9-107A pursuant to the debtor's security agreement; or

(E) the collateral is chattel paper and the secured party has possession and control under Section 9-314A pursuant to the debtor's security agreement.

Reporter's Note

~~Substitute for authenticated security agreement.~~ Under existing subparagraphs (b)(3)(B) and (b)(3)(D), possession of tangible collateral and control of intangible collateral may substitute for an authenticated security agreement that provides a description of the collateral. With respect to chattel paper, some of the authoritative records that evidence the right to payment may be tangible and some electronic. Accordingly, new subparagraph (b)(3)(E) would provide that possession of the tangible authoritative records, if any, and control of the electronic records, if any, may substitute for an authenticated security agreement.

Section 9-204. After-Acquired Property; Future Advances.

(a) **[After-acquired collateral.]** Except as otherwise provided in subsection (b), a security agreement may create or provide for a security interest in after-acquired collateral.

(b) **[When after-acquired property clause not effective.]** ~~A~~ Subject to subsection (c), a security interest does not attach under a term constituting an after-acquired property clause to:

(1) consumer goods, other than an accession when given as additional security, unless the debtor acquires rights in them within 10 days after the secured party gives value; or

(2) a commercial tort claim.

(c) [Limitation on subsection (b).] Subsection (b) does not prevent a security interest from attaching:

(1) to consumer goods as proceeds under Section 9-315(a) or commingled goods under Section 9-336(c);

(2) to a commercial tort claim as proceeds under Section 9-315(a); or

(3) under an after-acquired property clause to property that is proceeds of consumer goods or a commercial tort claim.

(d) [Future advances and other value.] A security agreement may provide that collateral secures, or that accounts, chattel paper, payment intangibles, or promissory notes are sold in connection with, future advances or other value, whether or not the advances or value are given pursuant to commitment.

* * *

Official Comment

* * *

3. After-Acquired Consumer Goods. Subsection (b)(1) makes ineffective an after-acquired property clause covering consumer goods (defined in Section 9-109), except as accessions (see Section 9-335), acquired more than 10 days after the secured party gives value. Subsection (b)(1) is unchanged in substance from the corresponding provision in former Section 9-204(2). However, a term granting a security interest in consumer goods that will be purchase-money collateral in the transaction is not “a term constituting an after-acquired property clause.” Consequently, subsection (b)(1) does not prevent the security interest from attaching even if the collateral is not an accession and the debtor acquires rights in the collateral more than 10 days after the secured party gives value.

* * *

1 **Reporter's Note**

2 The proposed revision would clarify the appropriate result when a debtor acquires
3 consumer goods or a commercial tort claim as proceeds of collateral and when a consumer
4 acquires an interest in commingled goods. This clarification would override the erroneous
5 holdings of several cases addressing commercial tort claims that are proceeds. The proposed
6 addition to Comment 3, would provide additional clarification.

7
8 * * *

9 **Section 9-207. Rights and Duties of Secured Party Having Possession or Control**
10 **of Collateral.**

11 * * *

12 (c) [Duties and rights when secured party in possession or control.] Except as
13 otherwise provided in subsection (d), a secured party having possession of collateral or control of
14 collateral under Section 7-106, 9-104, 9-105, 9-105A, 9-106, ~~or~~ 9-107, or 9-107A:

15 (1) may hold as additional security any proceeds, except money or funds, received
16 from the collateral;

17 (2) shall apply money or funds received from the collateral to reduce the secured
18 obligation, unless remitted to the debtor; and

19 (3) may create a security interest in the collateral.

20 * * *

21 **Reporter's Note**

22 *New methods of control.* Cross-references have been added to reflect the new methods of
23 “control” for electronic money (draft § 9-105A) and for controllable electronic records,
24 controllable accounts, and controllable payment intangibles (draft § 9-107A).

25
26 **Section 9-208. Additional Duties of Secured Party Having Control of Collateral.**

1 (a) **[Applicability of section.]** This section applies to cases in which there is no
2 outstanding secured obligation and the secured party is not committed to make advances, incur
3 obligations, or otherwise give value.

4 (b) **[Duties of secured party after receiving demand from debtor.]** Within 10 days
5 after receiving an authenticated demand by the debtor:

6 * * *

7 (1) a secured party having control of a deposit account under Section 9-104(a)(2)
8 shall send to the bank with which the deposit account is maintained an authenticated statement
9 that releases the bank from any further obligation to comply with instructions originated by the
10 secured party;

11 (2) a secured party having control of a deposit account under Section 9-104(a)(3)

12 shall:

13 (A) pay the debtor the balance on deposit in the deposit account; or

14 (B) transfer the balance on deposit into a deposit account in the debtor's
15 name;

16 ~~(3) a secured party, other than a buyer, having control of electronic chattel paper~~
17 ~~under Section 9-105 shall:~~

18 ~~(A) communicate the authoritative copy of the electronic chattel paper to~~
19 ~~the debtor or its designated custodian;~~

20 ~~(B) if the debtor designates a custodian that is the designated custodian~~
21 ~~with which the authoritative copy of the electronic chattel paper is maintained for the secured~~
22 ~~party, communicate to the custodian an authenticated record releasing the designated custodian~~

1 ~~from any further obligation to comply with instructions originated by the secured party and~~
2 ~~instructing the custodian to comply with instructions originated by the debtor; and~~

3 ~~(C) take appropriate action to enable the debtor or its designated custodian~~
4 ~~to make copies of or revisions to the authoritative copy which add or change an identified~~
5 ~~assignee of the authoritative copy without the consent of the secured party; and~~

6 (3) a secured party, other than a buyer, having control under Section 9-105 of an
7 electronic copy of a record evidencing chattel paper shall transfer control of the electronic copy
8 to the debtor or a person designated by the debtor;

9 * * *

10 (4) a secured party having control of investment property under Section 8-
11 106(d)(2) or 9-106(b) shall send to the securities intermediary or commodity intermediary with
12 which the security entitlement or commodity contract is maintained an authenticated record that
13 releases the securities intermediary or commodity intermediary from any further obligation to
14 comply with entitlement orders or directions originated by the secured party;

15 (5) a secured party having control of a letter-of-credit right under Section 9-107
16 shall send to each person having an unfulfilled obligation to pay or deliver proceeds of the letter
17 of credit to the secured party an authenticated release from any further obligation to pay or
18 deliver proceeds of the letter of credit to the secured party; and

19 ~~(6) a secured party having control of an electronic document shall:~~

20 ~~(A) give control of the electronic document to the debtor or its designated~~
21 ~~custodian;~~

22 ~~(B) if the debtor designates a custodian that is the designated custodian~~
23 ~~with which the authoritative copy of the electronic document is maintained for the secured party;~~

1 communicate to the custodian an authenticated record releasing the designated custodian from
2 any further obligation to comply with instructions originated by the secured party and instructing
3 the custodian to comply with instructions originated by the debtor; and

4 ~~(C) take appropriate action to enable the debtor or its designated custodian~~
5 ~~to make copies of or revisions to the authoritative copy which add or change an identified~~
6 ~~assignee of the authoritative copy without the consent of the secured party;~~

7 (6) a secured party having control under Section 7-106 of an authoritative copy of
8 an electronic document of title shall transfer control of the authoritative copy to the debtor or a
9 person designated by the debtor;

10 (7) a secured party having control under Section 9-105A of electronic money shall
11 transfer control of the electronic money to the debtor or a person designated by the debtor; and;

12 (8) a secured party having control under Section 12-105 of a controllable
13 electronic record shall transfer control of the controllable electronic record to the debtor or a
14 person designated by the debtor.

15 **Reporter's Note**

16 *New methods of control.* Provisions have been modified or added to take account of the
17 new methods of "control" for chattel paper, electronic documents, electronic money, and
18 controllable electronic records.

19 * * *
20

21 **Section 9-301. Law Governing Perfection and Priority of Security Interests.**

22 Except as otherwise provided in Sections 9-303 through ~~9-306~~ 9-306A306B, the
23 following rules determine the law governing perfection, the effect of perfection or nonperfection,
24 and the priority of a security interest in collateral:

(1) Except as otherwise provided in this section, while a debtor is located in a jurisdiction, the local law of that jurisdiction governs perfection, the effect of perfection or nonperfection, and the priority of a security interest in collateral.

(2) ~~While~~ Except as otherwise provided in paragraph (5), while collateral is located in a jurisdiction, the local law of that jurisdiction governs perfection, the effect of perfection or nonperfection, and the priority of a possessory security interest in that collateral.

(3) Except as otherwise provided in paragraph (4), while negotiable tangible documents, goods, instruments, or tangible money, ~~or tangible chattel paper~~ is located in a jurisdiction, the local law of that jurisdiction governs:

(A) perfection of a security interest in the goods by filing a fixture filing;

(B) perfection of a security interest in timber to be cut; and

(C) the effect of perfection or nonperfection and the priority of a nonpossessory security interest in the collateral.

* * *

~~(5) While~~ (5) If an authoritative tangible copy of a record evidences chattel paper and the chattel paper is not evidenced by an authoritative electronic copy, while an authoritative tangible copy of a record evidencing chattel paper is located in a jurisdiction, the local law of that jurisdiction governs:

(A) perfection of a security interest in the chattel paper by possession~~and control~~ under Section 9-314A; and

(B) the effect of perfection or nonperfection and the priority of a security interest in the chattel paper.

Reporter's Note

1 1. *Choice of governing law.* Under the amended definition of chattel paper, a right to
2 payment and rights in related property may be evidenced by one or more authoritative tangible
3 copies and one or more authoritative electronic copies.

4
5 Draft paragraph (5) ~~would address these cases by tying~~ the choice-of-law rules to the
6 location of the authoritative tangible copy: when no authoritative electronic copy exists.
7 Consequently, ~~in that circumstance~~ the local law of the jurisdiction where the authoritative
8 tangible copy is physically located would govern perfection of a security interest in the chattel
9 paper by possession ~~and control under Section 9-314A. under Section 9-314A. The location of~~
10 the debtor would govern perfection by filing. See paragraph (1). Section 9-306A governs
11 perfection and priority when one or more authoritative electronic copies exist and there are no
12 authoritative tangible copies.

13
14
15 ~~The location of the debtor would govern perfection by filing. See paragraph (1).~~
16 ~~However, under paragraph (5), if there is an authoritative tangible copy, the location of that copy~~
17 ~~would govern the effect of perfection or nonperfection and the priority of a security interest in~~
18 ~~the chattel paper.~~

19
20 ~~This approach is modeled on paragraph (3), which is designed to reduce the confusion~~
21 ~~that might arise when the choice of law rules of a given jurisdiction result in each of two~~
22 ~~conflicting security interests in the same collateral being governed by a different priority rule.~~
23 ~~The Drafting Committee plans to reconsider the approach.~~

24
25 2. *Multiple authoritative tangible copies.* Like existing law, paragraph (5) assumes that
26 all the authoritative tangible copies are located in the same jurisdiction. However, assuming the
27 secured party is in possession of all the tangible copies, even if the copies are located in more
28 than one jurisdiction the situation is unlikely to be problematic.

29
30 * * *

31 Section 9-306A. * * *

32 **Section 9-306A. Law Governing Perfection and Priority of Security Interests in**
33 **Chattel Paper Evidenced by Authoritative Electronic Copy and Not by Authoritative**
34 **Tangible Copy.**

35 (a) [Governing law: general rules.] Except as provided in subsection (d), if chattel
36 paper is evidenced by an authoritative electronic copy of the chattel paper and is not evidenced
37 by an authoritative tangible copy, the local law of the electronic chattel paper's jurisdiction

governs perfection, the effect of perfection or nonperfection, and the priority of a security interest in the chattel paper.

(b) [Electronic Chattel Paper's Jurisdiction.] The following rules determine the electronic chattel paper's jurisdiction under this section:

(1) If the authoritative electronic copy of chattel paper, or a record attached to or logically associated with the electronic copy which is readily available for review, expressly provides that a particular jurisdiction is the electronic chattel paper's jurisdiction for purposes of this part, this article, or the [Uniform Commercial Code], that jurisdiction is the electronic chattel paper's jurisdiction.

(2) If paragraph (1) does not apply and the rules of the system in which the electronic copy is recorded are readily available for review and expressly provide that a particular jurisdiction is the controllable electronic record's jurisdiction for purposes of this part, this article, or the [Uniform Commercial Code], that jurisdiction is the electronic chattel paper's jurisdiction.

(3) If paragraphs (1) and (2) do not apply and the electronic copy, or a record attached to or logically associated with the electronic copy which is readily available for review, expressly provides that the chattel paper is governed by the law of a particular jurisdiction, that jurisdiction is the electronic chattel paper's jurisdiction.

(4) If paragraphs (1) through (3) do not apply and the rules of the system in which the electronic copy is recorded are readily available for review and expressly provide that the chattel paper or the system is governed by the law of a particular jurisdiction, that jurisdiction is the electronic chattel paper's jurisdiction.

(5) If paragraphs (1) through (4) do not apply, the electronic chattel paper's jurisdiction is the jurisdiction in which the debtor is located.

(c) [Relation of transaction to electronic chattel paper's jurisdiction not necessary.]
Subsections (a) and (b) apply even if a transaction does not bear any relation to the electronic chattel paper's jurisdiction.

(d) [When perfection governed by law of jurisdiction where debtor is located.] The local law of the jurisdiction in which the debtor is located governs perfection by filing of a security interest in chattel paper that is evidenced by an authoritative electronic copy of the chattel paper and is not evidenced by an authoritative tangible copy.

Reporter's Note

1. *Source of these provisions.* Draft § 9-306A derives from Sections 8-110 and 9-305 on law governing perfection and priority of security interests in investment property (as do draft §§ 9-306B and 12-107).

2. *Applicability of this Section.* This section determines the law governing perfection and priority of security interests in chattel paper that is evidenced by an authoritative electronic copy of the chattel paper. It applies whether or not the chattel paper also is evidenced by an authoritative tangible copy. For chattel paper that is evidenced by an authoritative tangible copy but not evidenced by an authoritative electronic copy, draft § 9-301(5) provides that perfection by possession and priority are governed by the local law of the jurisdiction in which the tangible copy is located.

3. *The basic rule: Electronic chattel paper's jurisdiction.* Subsection (a) provides that the law governing perfection and priority of security interests in chattel paper evidenced by an authoritative electronic copy of the chattel paper, and not evidenced by an authoritative tangible copy, is the local law of the electronic chattel paper's jurisdiction. Drawing on Sections 8-110 and 9-305, it is the authoritative electronic copy itself, records attached thereto or associated therewith, or the system in which the authoritative electronic copy is recorded that determines the governing law. Subsection (b) provides a "waterfall" of rules based on provisions that identify a particular jurisdiction as the electronic chattel paper's jurisdiction or alternatively that provide the governing law of the chattel paper or of the system in which the electronic copy is recorded.

4. *Rationale for this Section.* A major buyer of, or secured lender against, chattel paper may arrange for authoritative electronic copies of chattel paper that it wishes to have assigned to it to be submitted into a system for the control and assignment of the chattel paper. The secured

parties and lessors that will be assigning the chattel paper may be located in many different jurisdictions. As to assignments of the chattel paper by these secured parties and lessors, but for this section perfection and priority would be governed by the law of each assignor-debtor's location under Section 9-301(1). Under this section, however, the law of a single jurisdiction—the electronic chattel paper's jurisdiction—could govern perfection and priority with respect to all of the assignments. By avoiding the application of the laws of multiple jurisdictions to perfection and priority, this rule could substantially reduce transaction costs.

Section 9-306B. Law Governing Perfection and Priority of Security Interests in Controllable Accounts, Controllable Electronic Records, and Controllable Payment Intangibles.

(a) **[Governing law: general rules.]** Except as provided in subsection (b), the local law of the controllable electronic record's jurisdiction as specified in Section 12-107(c) ~~and (d)]~~ governs perfection, the effect of perfection or nonperfection, and the priority of a security interest in a controllable account, controllable electronic record, or controllable payment intangible.

(b) ~~**[Governing law: When perfection governed by filing.]**~~ **law of jurisdiction where debtor is located.]** The local law of the jurisdiction in which the debtor is located governs:

(1) perfection of a security interest in a controllable ~~account, controllable~~ electronic record, ~~or controllable payment intangible~~ by filing; and

(2) automatic perfection of a security interest in a controllable payment intangible created by a sale of the controllable payment intangible.

~~**[(c) [Location of debtor.] In an action in which the location of the debtor is in issue for purposes of subsection (b), if the evidence is not sufficient to establish the location of the debtor, the debtor is located in the District of Columbia.]**~~

Reporter's Note

1. *Perfection by control and priority.* Subsection (a) deals with perfection of a security interest in a controllable account, controllable electronic record, or controllable payment

1 intangible other than by filing—i.e., perfection by control under draft § 12-105—and priority.
2 For these purposes the governing law is that of the controllable electronic record’s jurisdiction
3 under draft § 12-107(c) ~~[and (d)]~~.
4

5 2. *Perfection by filing.* Under subsection (b) the local law of the jurisdiction of the
6 debtor’s location governs perfection of a security interest in a controllable account, controllable
7 electronic record, or controllable payment intangible by filing (but not priority, as to which
8 subsection (a) would apply). ~~The same jurisdiction’s law applies to perfection by filing for~~
9 ~~controllable accounts and controllable payment intangibles pursuant to the general rule in~~
10 ~~Section 9-301(1).~~
11

12 ~~3. *Location of debtor in District of Columbia.* As with the approach in draft § 12-107(e)~~
13 ~~and (d), subsection (e) would locate the debtor in the District of Columbia when a tribunal lacks~~
14 ~~sufficient evidence to determine the actual location of a debtor. Subsection (e) appears in square~~
15 ~~brackets to indicate that the Drafting Committee has yet to determine whether it should be~~
16 ~~included. One view is that, for purposes of perfection by filing, there is no need to address the~~
17 ~~situation in which the debtor’s location is undetermined and subsection (e) is unnecessary. In~~
18 ~~such a case, a secured party could not perfect its security interest by filing and control would be~~
19 ~~the only available perfection method. Another view is that there is no downside to providing for~~
20 ~~perfection by filing in the District of Columbia and subsection (e) should be included. The~~
21 ~~rationale for permitting such a filing is similar to that supporting the location of a debtor in the~~
22 ~~District of Columbia under Section 9-307(c). If subsection (e) is adopted, then subsection (b)~~
23 ~~should be modified to include controllable accounts and controllable payment intangibles.~~
24

25 **~~Section 9-307. Location of Debtor.~~**

26 ~~* * *~~

27 ~~(b) [Debtor’s location: general rules.] Except as otherwise provided in this~~
28 ~~section[and Section 9-306A(c)], the following rules determine a debtor’s location:~~

29 (1) ~~A debtor who is an individual is located at the individual’s principal residence.~~

30 (2) ~~A debtor that is an organization and has only one place of business is located~~
31 ~~at its place of business.~~

32 (3) ~~A debtor that is an organization and has more than one place of business is~~
33 ~~located at its chief executive office.~~

34 ~~* * *~~

35 **Reporter’s Note**

~~Exception for draft § 9-306A(c). If draft § 9-306A(c) is adopted, then the exception that appears in square brackets in subsection (b) of this section should be adopted as well.~~

* * *

Section 9-310. When Filing Required to Perfect Security Interest or Agricultural Lien; Security Interests and Agricultural Liens to Which Filing Provisions Do Not Apply.

* * *

(b) [Exceptions: filing not necessary.] The filing of a financing statement is not necessary to perfect a security interest:

* * *

(8) in controllable accounts, controllable electronic records, controllable payment intangibles, deposit accounts, ~~electronic chattel paper~~, electronic documents, investment property, or letter-of-credit rights which is perfected by control under Section 9-314;

(9) in ~~chattel paper which is perfected by possession and control under Section 9-314A;~~

~~(9)(10)~~ in proceeds which is perfected under Section 9-315; or

~~(10)(11)~~ that is perfected under Section 9-316. ~~9-316; or~~

~~(11) in chattel paper which is perfected by possession and control under Section 9-314A.~~

Reporter's Note

Exceptions to perfection by filing. Exceptions to perfection by filing have been added for controllable accounts, controllable electronic records, and controllable payment intangibles (perfection by control) and for chattel paper (perfection by possession and control).

* * *

Section 9-312. Perfection of Security Interests in Chattel Paper, Controllable Accounts, Controllable Electronic Records, Controllable Payment Intangibles, Deposit

**Accounts, Negotiable Documents, Goods Covered by Documents, Instruments,
Investment Property, Letter-of-Credit Rights, and Money; Perfection by Permissive
Filing; Temporary Perfection Without Filing or Transfer of Possession.**

(a) **[Perfection by filing permitted.]** A security interest in chattel paper, controllable
accounts, controllable electronic records, controllable payment intangibles, ~~chattel paper,~~
~~negotiable documents,~~ instruments, or investment property, or negotiable documents may be
perfected by filing.

(b) **[Control or possession of certain collateral.]** Except as otherwise provided in
Section 9-315(c) and (d) for proceeds:

(1) a security interest in a deposit account may be perfected only by control under
Section 9-314;

(2) except as otherwise provided in Section 9-308(d), a security interest in a letter-
of-credit right may be perfected only by control under Section 9-314; ~~and~~

(3) a security interest in tangible money may be perfected only by the secured
party's taking possession under Section 9-313; and

(4) a security interest in electronic money may be perfected only by control under
Section 9-314.

(c) **[Goods covered by negotiable document.]** While goods are in the possession of a
bailee that has issued a negotiable document covering the goods:

(1) a security interest in the goods may be perfected by perfecting a security
interest in the document; and

(2) a security interest perfected in the document has priority over any security
interest that becomes perfected in the goods by another method during that time.

1 (d) [Goods covered by nonnegotiable document.] While goods are in the possession
2 of a bailee that has issued a nonnegotiable document covering the goods, a security interest in the
3 goods may be perfected by:

4 (1) issuance of a document in the name of the secured party;

5 (2) the bailee's receipt of notification of the secured party's interest; or

6 (3) filing as to the goods.

7 * * *

8 **Reporter's Note**

9 *Perfection for controllable accounts, controllable electronic records, controllable*
10 *payment intangibles, tangible money, and electronic money.* Perfection for controllable accounts,
11 controllable electronic records, and controllable payment intangibles may be by filing, for
12 tangible money may be only by possession, and for electronic money may be only by control.

13 **Official Comment**

14 * * *

15
16
17
18 7. Goods Covered by Document of Title. Subsection (c) applies to goods in the
19 possession of a bailee who has issued a negotiable document covering the goods. Subsection (d)
20 applies to goods in the possession of a bailee who has issued a nonnegotiable document of title,
21 including a document of title that is "non-negotiable" under Section 7-104. Section 9-313
22 governs perfection of a security interest in goods in the possession of a bailee who has not issued
23 a document of title.

24
25 Subsection (c) clarifies the perfection and priority rules in former Section 9-304(2).
26 Consistently with the provisions of Article 7, subsection (c) takes the position that, as long as a
27 negotiable document covering goods is outstanding, title to the goods is, so to say, locked up in
28 the document. Accordingly, a security interest in goods covered by a negotiable document may
29 be perfected by perfecting a security interest in the document. The security interest also may be
30 perfected by another method, e.g., by filing. The priority rule in subsection (c) governs only
31 priority between (i) a security interest in goods which is perfected by perfecting in the document
32 and (ii) a security interest in the goods which becomes perfected by another method while the
33 goods are covered by the document.

34
35 **Example 1:** While wheat is in a grain elevator and covered by a negotiable warehouse
36 receipt, Debtor creates a security interest in the wheat in favor of SP-1 and SP-2. SP-1
37 perfects by filing a financing statement covering "wheat." Thereafter, SP-2 perfects by
38 filing a financing statement describing the warehouse receipt. Subsection (c)(1) provides

1 that SP-2's security interest is perfected. Subsection (c)(2) provides that SP-2's security
2 interest is senior to SP-1's.

3
4 **Example 2:** The facts are as in Example 1, but SP-1's security interest attached and was
5 perfected before the goods were delivered to the grain elevator. Subsection (c)(2) does
6 not apply, because SP-1's security interest did not become perfected during the time that
7 the wheat was in the possession of a bailee. Rather, the first-to-file-or-perfect priority
8 rule applies. See Sections 9-322 and 7-503.

9
10 A secured party may become "a holder to whom a negotiable document of title has been duly
11 negotiated" under Section 7-501. If so, the secured party acquires the rights specified by Article
12 7. Article 9 does not limit those rights, which may include the right to priority over an earlier-
13 perfected security interest. See Section 9-331(a).

14
15 Subsection (d) takes a different approach to the problem of goods covered by a
16 nonnegotiable document. Here, title to the goods is not looked on as being locked up in the
17 document. For example, a transferee that takes delivery of a nonnegotiable document receives,
18 under Section 7-504(a), "the title and rights" of the transferor, but the transferee would not
19 thereby become a "person entitled under the document" with a right to receive delivery of the
20 goods from the bailee. and the The secured party may perfect its security interest directly in the
21 goods by filing as to them. The subsection provides two other methods of perfection: issuance
22 of the document in the secured party's name (as consignee of a straight bill of lading or the
23 person to whom delivery would be made under a non-negotiable warehouse receipt) and receipt
24 of notification of the secured party's interest by the bailee. Issuance (or reissuance) of the
25 nonnegotiable document in the secured party's name would allow the secured party to become a
26 "person entitled under the document." However, the bailee's receipt of notification would not
27 confer on the secured party the status of a person entitled unless the notification resulted from an
28 instruction under the document. See Section 7-102(a)(9) (defining "person entitled under the
29 document") & Comment 6. Perfection under subsection (d) occurs when the bailee receives
30 notification of the secured party's interest in the goods, regardless of who sends the notification.
31 Receipt of notification is effective to perfect, regardless of whether the bailee responds. Unlike
32 former Section 9-304(3), from which it derives, subsection (d) does not apply to goods in the
33 possession of a bailee who has not issued a document of title. Section 9-313(c) covers that case
34 and provides that perfection by possession as to goods not covered by a document requires the
35 bailee's acknowledgment.

36
37 Subsection (a) makes clear that a security interest in negotiable documents (and other
38 collateral mentioned there) may be perfected by filing, but it makes no mention of nonnegotiable
39 documents. However, under the general rule of Section 9-310, a security interest in a
40 nonnegotiable document can be perfected by filing. A security interest in an electronic
41 document, negotiable or nonnegotiable, can be perfected by control under Section 7-106. Section
42 9-314(a). But a security interest in a nonnegotiable tangible document cannot be perfected by
43 possession. Section 9-313(a). Although a perfected security interest in a nonnegotiable
44 document might provide useful benefits for the secured party, it would not perfect a security
45 interest in the goods. And by perfecting a security interest in the nonnegotiable document the
46 secured party would not thereby become a "person entitled under the document." Indeed, unless

1 the secured party also took delivery of the document (i.e., possession or control under Section 1-
2 201(b)(15)), it would not obtain the rights of a transferee under Section 7-504(a).

4 **Section 9-313. When Possession by or Delivery to Secured Party Perfects**

5 **Security Interest Without Filing.**

6 (a) **[Perfection by possession or delivery.]** Except as otherwise provided in subsection
7 (b), a secured party may perfect a security interest in ~~tangible negotiable documents~~, goods,
8 instruments, negotiable tangible documents, or tangible money, ~~or tangible chattel paper~~ by
9 taking possession of the collateral. A secured party may perfect a security interest in certificated
10 securities by taking delivery of the certificated securities under Section 8-301.

11 * * *

12 **Reporter's Note**

13 *Perfection by possession.* Perfection by possession of tangible chattel paper has been
14 deleted from this section. Instead, perfection by possession and control would be governed by
15 new Section 9-314A.

16 **Section 9-314. Perfection by Control.**

17 (a) **[Perfection by control.]** A security interest in ~~investment property, deposit accounts,~~
18 ~~letter-of-credit rights, controllable accounts, controllable electronic records, controllable~~
19 ~~payment intangibles, electronic chattel paper, or electronic documents~~ deposit accounts,
20 electronic documents, electronic money, investment property, or letter-of-credit rights, may be
21 perfected by control of the collateral under Section 7-106, 9-104, ~~9-105,~~ 9-105A, 9-106, ~~or 9-~~
22 107, or 9-107A.

23 (b) **[Specified collateral: time of perfection by control; continuation of perfection.]**
24 A security interest in controllable accounts, controllable electronic records, controllable payment
25 intangibles, deposit accounts, ~~electronic chattel paper, letter-of-credit rights, or electronic~~
26 documents, electronic money, or letter-of-credit rights is perfected by control under Section 7-
27

1 106, 9-104, ~~9-105~~, 9-105A, ~~or 9-107~~, or 9-107A when the secured party obtains control and
2 remains perfected by control only while the secured party retains control.

3 * * *

4 **Reporter's Note**

5
6 1. Perfection by control. Perfection by control of controllable accounts, controllable
7 electronic records, controllable payment intangibles, and electronic money has been added to this
8 section. Perfection by control of electronic chattel paper has been deleted from this section.
9 Instead, draft § 9-314A would govern perfection for chattel paper by possession and control.

10
11 2. Shared control between debtor and secured party. Draft §§ 7-106 (control of electronic
12 documents), 9-105A (control of electronic money), and 12-105 (control of controllable electronic
13 records, on which control of controllable accounts and controllable payment intangibles under
14 draft § 9-107A depends) contemplate the possibility that both a debtor and a secured party may
15 have control of the relevant collateral. Shared control is also possible under draft § 9-105
16 (control of authoritative electronic records evidencing chattel paper). Such shared control
17 between a debtor and secured party does not impair perfection of a security interest under this
18 Section or draft § 9-314A. This is so even if the exercise of a power necessary for control
19 requires exercise of the power by both the debtor and secured party or if the debtor. It also
20 would be the case if the debtor's control permits it to transfer control without consent or action
21 by the secured party. For example, such a power is made explicit in Section 9-104(b) and 8-
22 106(f) as well as in connection with shared control mentioned above. However, if the debtor
23 could exercise such a power without consent or exercise by the secured party while the secured
24 party could exercise the power only with the consent or exercise by the debtor, the shared control
25 under those circumstances would not be sufficient for purposes of perfection of a security
26 interest.

27 **Section 9-314A. Perfection by Possession and Control of Chattel Paper.**

28
29 (a) [Perfection by possession and control.] A secured party may perfect a security
30 interest in chattel paper by taking possession of ~~the~~ each authoritative tangible copy of the record
31 evidencing the chattel paper and obtaining control of ~~the~~ each authoritative electronic copy of the
32 electronic record evidencing the chattel paper.

33 (b) [Time of perfection; continuation of perfection.] A security interest is perfected
34 under subsection (a) when the secured party takes possession and obtains control and remains
35 perfected under subsection (a) only while the secured party retains possession and control.

(c) [Application of Section 9-313 to Perfection by Possession of Chattel Paper.]

Section 9-313(c) and (f) through (i) applies to perfection by possession of an authoritative tangible copy of a record evidencing chattel paper.

Reporter's Note

1. “*Authoritative copy.*” This draft section provides that to perfect a security interest in chattel paper other than by filing, a secured party must obtain control of all authoritative electronic copies and take possession of all authoritative tangible copies.

Existing Section 9-105(b) distinguishes between authoritative and nonauthoritative copies of electronic chattel paper. Like current law, the draft refers to copies that are “authoritative.” And, like current law, the draft does not define the term. However, the draft would apply this concept also to tangible records that evidence chattel paper.

As explained above, perfection of a security interest in chattel paper by taking possession of the collateral was understood to mean taking possession of the wet-ink “original.” Experience has shown that the concept of an original breaks down when one allows for the possibility of the same monetary obligation being evidenced in different media over time, such as where electronic records evidencing the chattel paper are “papered out” (replaced with tangible records evidencing the same chattel paper) or tangible records are “converted” to electronic records.

To accommodate current practices and future technology, the draft would allow the parties considerable flexibility in determining the method used to establish whether a particular copy is authoritative, ~~as long as~~ provided that third parties are able to reasonably identify the authoritative copies that must be possessed or controlled to achieve perfection. For example, the parties could develop a system or protocol where each copy is watermarked as authoritative or nonauthoritative or where the terms of the records themselves describe how to determine which copies are authoritative and which are not.

2. *Time of perfection.* Subsection (b) is modeled on Sections 9-313(d) and 9-314(b).

3. *Applicability of Section 9-313.* New subsection (c) makes specified subsections of Section 9-313 applicable to possession of tangible authoritative copies of records evidencing chattel paper.

* * *

Section 9-316. Continued Perfection of Security Interest Following Change in Governing Law.

1 (a) **[General rule: effect on perfection of change in governing law.]** A security
2 interest perfected pursuant to the law of the jurisdiction designated in Section 9-301(1), ~~or~~ 9-
3 305(c), or 9-306A(b) remains perfected until the earliest of:

4 (1) the time perfection would have ceased under the law of that jurisdiction;

5 (2) the expiration of four months after a change of the debtor's location to another
6 jurisdiction; or

7 (3) the expiration of one year after a transfer of collateral to a person that thereby
8 becomes a debtor and is located in another jurisdiction.

9 * * *

10 (f) **[Change in jurisdiction of controllable electronic record, bank, issuer, nominated**
11 **person, securities intermediary, or commodity intermediary.]** A security interest in
12 controllable accounts, controllable electronic records, controllable payment intangibles, chattel
13 paper, deposit accounts, letter-of-credit rights, or investment property which is perfected under
14 the law of the controllable electronic record's jurisdiction, the electronic chattel paper's
15 jurisdiction, the bank's jurisdiction, the issuer's jurisdiction, a nominated person's jurisdiction,
16 the securities intermediary's jurisdiction, or the commodity intermediary's jurisdiction, as
17 applicable, remains perfected until the earlier of:

18 (1) the time the security interest would have become unperfected under the law of
19 that jurisdiction; or

20 (2) the expiration of four months after a change of the applicable jurisdiction to
21 another jurisdiction.

22 (g) **[Subsection (f) security interest perfected or unperfected under law of new**
23 **jurisdiction.]** If a security interest described in subsection (f) becomes perfected under the law

1 of the other jurisdiction before the earlier of the time or the end of the period described in that
2 subsection, it remains perfected thereafter. If the security interest does not become perfected
3 under the law of the other jurisdiction before the earlier of that time or the end of that period, it
4 becomes unperfected and is deemed never to have been perfected as against a purchaser of the
5 collateral for value.

6 * * *

7 **Reporter's Note**

8
9 *Change in controllable electronic record's jurisdiction.* A change in the controllable
10 electronic record's jurisdiction has been added to this section to conform to the treatment for
11 other collateral subject to similar rules on governing law. *See* draft §§ 9-306A and 12-107.

12
13 * * *

14 **Section 9-317. Interests That Take Priority Over or Take Free of Security**

15 **Interest or Agricultural Lien.**

16
17 * * *

18 (b) **[Buyers that receive delivery.]** Except as otherwise provided in subsection (e), a
19 buyer, other than a secured party, of ~~tangible chattel paper, tangible documents,~~ goods,
20 instruments, tangible documents, or a security certificate takes free of a security interest or
21 agricultural lien if the buyer gives value and receives delivery of the collateral without
22 knowledge of the security interest or agricultural lien and before it is perfected.

23 * * *

24 (d) **[Licensees and buyers of certain collateral.]** ~~A. A Subject to subsections (f), (g),~~
25 and (h), a licensee of a general intangible or a buyer, other than a secured party, of ~~accounts;~~
26 ~~electronic collateral other than tangible chattel paper, general intangible~~ tangible documents,
27 goods, instruments, or ~~investment property other than~~ a certificated security takes free of a

1 security interest if the licensee or buyer gives value without knowledge of the security interest
2 and before it is perfected.

3 * * *

4 **(f) [Buyers of chattel paper.]** A buyer~~f.~~, other than a secured party~~.f.~~, of chattel paper
5 takes free of a security interest if, without knowledge of the security interest and before it is
6 perfected, the buyer gives value and:

7 (1) receives delivery of ~~the~~each authoritative tangible copy of the record
8 evidencing the chattel paper; and ~~obtains control of the,~~

9 (2) if each authoritative electronic copy of the record evidencing the chattel paper
10 can be subjected to control under Section 9-105, obtains control of each authoritative electronic
11 copy.

12 **(g) [Buyers of electronic documents.]** A buyer of an electronic document takes free of a
13 security interest if, without knowledge of the security interest and before it is perfected, the
14 buyer gives value and, if the electronic document can be subjected to control under Section 7-
15 106, obtains control of the electronic document.

16 **(h) [Buyers of controllable electronic records.]** A buyer of a controllable electronic
17 record takes free of a security interest if, without knowledge of the security interest and before it
18 is perfected, the buyer gives value and obtains control of the controllable electronic record .

19 Reporter's Note

20
21 1. New rule for buyers of chattel paper. The new take-free rule in subsection (f) for
22 buyers of chattel paper reflects the corresponding changes in the definition of chattel paper and
23 methods of perfection. See draft §§ 9-102(a)(11) (defining “chattel paper”); 9-314A (perfection
24 by possession and control). ~~Because this Note that~~ subsection (f) applies only to a buyer of
25 chattel paper ~~, the Drafting Committee should consider whether the reference to~~ “other than a
26 Secured party,” and most buyers of chattel paper are secured ~~party,” parties.~~ See UCC §§ 9-
27 109(a)(3) (Article 9 applies to a sale of chattel paper); 1-201(b)(35) (defining “security interest”
28 to include the interest of a buyer of chattel paper). However, Article 9 does not apply to “a sale

1 of . . . chattel paper . . . as part of a sale of the business out of which ~~appears in square brackets,~~
2 ~~should be deleted,~~ . . . [the chattel paper] arose” and subsection (f) would apply to a buyer of
3 chattel paper in a such a sale of business transaction.

4
5 2. Control of electronic records evidencing chattel paper. Some systems for electronic
6 copies of records evidencing chattel paper do not provide for an assignee to obtain control of
7 electronic copies under Section 9-105. For this reason, new subsection (f) provides that a buyer
8 must obtain control of authoritative electronic copies of records evidencing chattel paper as a
9 condition for taking free only if the electronic copies can be subjected to control.

10
11 3. Control of electronic documents. As mentioned in Note 2 for chattel paper, a system
12 for electronic documents also may not provide for a transferee to obtain control of an electronic
13 document. New subsection (g) provides that a buyer must obtain control of an electronic
14 document as a condition for taking free only if the electronic document can be subjected to
15 control.

16
17 4. Control of controllable electronic records. Consistent with the treatment of electronic
18 copies of records evidencing chattel paper and electronic documents in new subsections (f) and
19 (g), new subsection (h) conditions the take-free rule for a buyer of a controllable electronic
20 record on the buyer’s obtaining control of the electronic record.

21
22 * * *

23 **Section 9-326A. Priority of Security Interests in Controllable Account,**
24 **Controllable Electronic Record, and Controllable Payment Intangible.** A security
25 interest in a controllable account, controllable electronic record, or controllable payment
26 intangible held by a secured party having control of the account, electronic record, or payment
27 intangible has priority over a conflicting security interest held by a secured party that does not
28 have control.

29 **Reporter’s Note**

30
31 *Control priority.* This section adopts an approach to priority in controllable accounts,
32 controllable electronic records, and controllable payment intangibles that is similar to the
33 approach of Sections 9-327 (deposit accounts) and 9-328 (investment property): A security
34 interest perfected by control has priority over conflicting security interests that are not perfected
35 by control.

36
37 * * *

38 **Section 9-330. Priority of Purchaser of Chattel Paper or Instrument.**

1 (a) **[Purchaser's priority: security interest claimed merely as proceeds.]** A purchaser
2 of chattel paper has priority over a security interest in the chattel paper which is claimed merely
3 as proceeds of inventory subject to a security interest if:

4 (1) in good faith and in the ordinary course of the purchaser's business, the
5 purchaser gives new value and takes possession of ~~the~~each authoritative tangible copy of the
6 record evidencing the chattel paper ~~or~~ and obtains control under Section 9-105 of the
7 authoritative electronic copy of the record evidencing the chattel paper ~~under Section 9-105~~; and

8 (2) the ~~chattel paper does~~ authoritative copy copies of the record evidencing the
9 chattel paper ~~does do~~ not indicate that it ~~has the~~ copy has copies have been assigned to an
10 identified assignee other than the purchaser.

11 (b) **[Purchaser's priority: other security interests.]** A purchaser of chattel paper has
12 priority over a security interest in the chattel paper which is claimed other than merely as
13 proceeds of inventory subject to a security interest if the purchaser gives new value and takes
14 possession of ~~the~~ each authoritative tangible copy of the record evidencing the chattel paper ~~or~~
15 and obtains control under Section 9-105 of the ~~each~~ each authoritative electronic copy of the record
16 evidencing the chattel paper ~~under Section 9-105~~ in good faith, in the ordinary course of the
17 purchaser's business, and without knowledge that the purchase violates the rights of the secured
18 party.

19 * * *

20 Reporter's Note

21
22 *New rule for buyers of chattel paper.* The revisions to the rules for purchasers of chattel
23 paper reflect the corresponding changes in the definition of chattel paper and methods of
24 perfection. *See* draft §§ 9-102(a)(11) (defining "chattel paper"); 9-314A (perfection by
25 possession and control).

26 Section 9-331. Priority of Rights of Purchasers of Controllable Accounts.

Controllable Electronic Records, Controllable Payment Intangibles, Instruments, Documents, Instruments, and Securities Under Other Articles; Priority of Interests in Financial Assets and Security Entitlements and Protections Against Assertions of Claims Under Article 8 Articles 8 and 12.

(a) **[Rights under Articles 3, 7, and 8, and 12 not limited.]** This article does not limit the rights of a holder in due course of a negotiable instrument, a holder to which a negotiable document of title has been duly negotiated, ~~or~~ a protected purchaser of a security, or a qualifying purchaser of a controllable account, controllable electronic record, or controllable payment intangible. These holders or purchasers take priority over an earlier security interest, even if perfected, to the extent provided in Articles 3, 7, ~~and 8,~~ and 12.

(b) **[Protection under Article 8 Articles 8 and 12.]** This article does not limit the rights of or impose liability on a person to the extent that the person is protected against the assertion of a claim under Article 8 or 12.

(c) **[Filing not notice.]** Filing under this article does not constitute notice of a claim or defense to the holders, ~~or~~ purchasers, or persons described in subsections (a) and (b).

Official Comment

* * *

3. * * *

The state-law Uniform Electronic Transactions Act (UETA) and the federal Electronic Signature in Global and National Commerce Act, 15 U.S.C. §§ 7001 *et seq.* (E-SIGN), provide certain rules for records referred to and defined as “transferable records.” See UETA § 16 and E-SIGN 15 U.S.C. § 7021. When certain conditions have been met, those acts confer on a person the status of a “holder” (as defined in former Section 1-201(20), current Section 1-201(b)(21)) of an “equivalent record” under former Section 9-308 (now, in part, Section § 9-330) and the rights and defenses of a “purchaser” under that section, among other effects. E-SIGN also refers to the rights and defenses of a purchaser under current Section § 9-330. As a matter of the application of the UCC, those are not the only sections of the UCC that would logically be affected by UETA and E-SIGN. For example, the rights of a holder in due course under § 9-

331(a) would also be covered by the application of those acts, when the conditions for applicability have been satisfied.

* * *

Reporter's Note

1. *Purpose of this section.* The revisions of this section ensure that Article 9 does not interfere with the protections that Article 12 affords to qualifying purchasers under the take-free and no-action rules in draft § 12-104(d) and (f).

2. *Relationship to UETA and E-SIGN.* The proposed addition to the official comment addresses the relationship of this section to those laws.

Section 9-332. Transfer of Money; Transfer of Funds from Deposit Account.

(a) [Transferee of tangible money.] A transferee of tangible money takes the money free of a security interest ~~unless the transferee acts in the money~~ if the transferee ~~when receiving~~ receives delivery of the money ~~does not act without acting~~ in collusion with the debtor in violating the rights of the secured party.

(b) [Transferee of electronic money.] A transferee of electronic money takes the money free of a security interest ~~unless the transferee acts in the money~~ if the transferee ~~when obtaining~~ obtains control of the money ~~does not act without acting~~ in collusion with the debtor in violating the rights of the secured party.

~~(b)(c)~~ [Transferee of funds from deposit account.] A transferee of funds from a deposit account takes the funds free of a security interest in the deposit account ~~unless the transferee acts~~ if the transferee ~~when receiving~~ receives the funds ~~does not act without acting~~ in collusion with the debtor in violating the rights of the secured party.

Reporter's Note

1. “*Delivery*” of *tangible money*; “*control*” of *electronic money*. Conditioning the takes-free rule of subsection (a) on delivery of money to the transferee reflects what has always been assumed—that a transfer of an interest in money that is not accompanied by a physical delivery would not impair the rights of third parties. Inasmuch as “electronic money” is a new

1 classification, no pattern of past practices or understandings exists. New subsection (b) provides
2 a rule for electronic money that complements draft subsection (a) by conditioning the takes-free
3 rule on the transferee obtaining control.
4

5 2. *Transferees of funds from deposit account.* Similarly, the revisions to subsection (c)
6 (formerly subsection (b)) make a corresponding change for a transfer of funds from a deposit
7 account. To qualify for the take-free protection under subsection (c), the transferee must
8 “receive[] the funds without acting in collusion [etc.] . . .” The draft amendments to Section 9-
9 332(a) and (c) are intended to clarify what is implicit under the original text. Although “funds”
10 is not defined in the UCC, if deposit accounts with a central bank or another bank were to
11 become money, as defined in Section 1-201(b)(24), transfers from such deposit accounts would
12 be covered by subsection (c) and not subsection (b). See draft § 9-102(a)(54A) (defining
13 “money” for purposes of Article 9 to exclude deposit accounts).
14

15 3. *Meaning of “transfer”.* A “transfer” of property occurs when the transferee has
16 obtained a property interest in the relevant property. *See* Section 9-102, Comment 26 (“In
17 numerous provisions, this Article refers to the “assignment” or the “transfer” of *property*
18 interests.” (emphasis added)). Other law determines when the transferee has acquired a property
19 interest. *See* Section 9-408, Comment 3 (“Other law determines whether a debtor has a property
20 interest (‘rights in the collateral’) and the nature of that interest.”). Although the terms “transfer”
21 and “transferee” are not defined in the UCC, the term “transfer” is broader in scope than
22 “purchase,” which requires taking in a “voluntary transaction creating an interest in property.”
23 Section 1-201(29). For example, “transfer” includes involuntary transfers such as the acquisition
24 of a judicial lien by a lien creditor. *See* Section 9-102(a)(52) (defining “lien creditor”).
25

26 4. *Transfer of interest in deposit account.* With respect to subsection (c), because a
27 deposit account is a debt of the bank to its customer, a transfer of the deposit account itself does
28 not transfer the funds credited to the deposit account. *See* Section 9-332, Comment 2 (5th
29 paragraph) (distinguishing “*transfers of funds from* a deposit account” from “*transfers of the*
30 *deposit account* itself or an interest therein.” (Emphasis in original.) Even when a “transfer” of a
31 deposit account has occurred under other law, the transferee does not take free of a security
32 interest under subsection (c) until the actual receipt of funds from the deposit account has
33 occurred. The proper construction of current subsection (b) and draft subsection (c) rejects cases
34 that treat garnishment of a deposit account as an immediate transfer of an interest in funds
35 credited to the deposit account.
36

37 The last event that provides a recovery for a creditor in a garnishment action virtually
38 always would be a transfer of funds from a deposit account. However, this does not mean that a
39 perfected security interest will always be cut off by a garnishing creditor. By intervening in the
40 garnishment proceeding to assert its senior security interest before funds are disbursed, the
41 secured party might assert and retain its priority. However, the relevant procedural law may not
42 provide the secured party with adequate advance notice. In some cases, a control agreement that
43 perfects a security interest in the deposit account may require the garnished bank to provide
44 prompt notice to the secured party. But not all control agreements will so provide. Moreover, the
45 secured party’s priority is not absolute. *See, e.g.,* Section 9-401, Comment 6 (explaining that the

equitable doctrine of marshaling may be appropriate in the case of a lien creditor's interest in collateral when a senior secured party is oversecured).

5. Temporal aspect of collusion test. In order for a transferee to take free of a security interest under this Section the transferee must receive delivery of tangible money, obtain control of electronic money, or receive funds from a deposit account without acting in collusion. Whether the transferee is acting without collusion is determined as of the time of delivery to the transferee or obtaining control or receipt of funds by the transferee.

* * *

Section 9-406. Discharge of Account Debtor; Notification of Assignment; Identification and Proof of Assignment; Restrictions on Assignment of Accounts, Chattel Paper, Payment Intangibles, and Promissory Notes Ineffective.

(a) [Discharge of account debtor; effect of notification.] Subject to subsections (b) through (i) and (l), an account debtor on an account, chattel paper, or a payment intangible may discharge its obligation by paying the assignor until, but not after, the account debtor receives a notification, authenticated by the assignor or the assignee, that the amount due or to become due has been assigned and that payment is to be made to the assignee. After receipt of the notification, the account debtor may discharge its obligation by paying the assignee and may not discharge the obligation by paying the assignor.

(b) [When notification ineffective.] Subject to ~~subsection~~ subsections (h) and (l), notification is ineffective under subsection (a):

(1) if it does not reasonably identify the rights assigned;

(2) to the extent that an agreement between an account debtor and a seller of a payment intangible limits the account debtor's duty to pay a person other than the seller and the limitation is effective under law other than this article; or

(3) at the option of an account debtor, if the notification notifies the account debtor to make less than the full amount of any installment or other periodic payment to the

1 assignee, even if:

2 (A) only a portion of the account, chattel paper, or payment intangible has
3 been assigned to that assignee;

4 (B) a portion has been assigned to another assignee; or

5 (C) the account debtor knows that the assignment to that assignee is
6 limited.

7 (c) **[Proof of assignment.]** Subject to ~~subsection~~ subsections (h) and (l), if requested by
8 the account debtor, an assignee shall seasonably furnish reasonable proof that the assignment
9 has been made. Unless the assignee complies, the account debtor may discharge its obligation
10 by paying the assignor, even if the account debtor has received a notification under subsection
11 (a).

12 * * *

13 (g) **[Subsection (b)(3) not waivable.]** Subject to subsection (h), an account debtor may
14 not waive or vary its option under subsection (b)(3).

15 (h) **[Rule for individual under other law.]** This section is subject to law other than this
16 article which establishes a different rule for an account debtor who is an individual and who
17 incurred the obligation primarily for personal, family, or household purposes.

18 (i) **[Inapplicability to health-care-insurance receivable.]** This section does not apply
19 to an assignment of a health-care-insurance receivable.

20 (j) **[Section prevails over specified inconsistent law.]** This section prevails over any
21 inconsistent provisions of the following statutes, rules, and regulations:

22 [List here any statutes, rules, and regulations containing provisions
23 inconsistent with this section.]

(k) **[Inapplicability to interests in certain entities.]** Subsections (d), (f), and (j) do not apply to a security interest in an ownership interest in a general partnership, limited partnership, or limited liability company.

(l) [Inapplicability of certain subsections.] Subsections (a) through (c) and (g) do not apply to a controllable account or controllable payment intangible.

Legislative Note: States that amend statutes, rules, and regulations to remove provisions inconsistent with this section need not enact subsection (j~~+~~).

Reporter's Note

Controllable accounts and controllable payment intangibles. For controllable accounts and controllable payment intangibles, subsections (a) through (c) and (g) will be replaced by analogous provisions in draft § 12-106.

* * *

Section 9-601. Rights After Default; Judicial Enforcement; Consignor or Buyer of Accounts, Chattel Paper, Payment Intangibles, or Promissory Notes.

* * *

(b) **[Rights and duties of secured party in possession or control.]** A secured party in possession of collateral or control of collateral under Section 7-106, 9-104, 9-105, 9-105A, 9-106, ~~or 9-107~~, or 9-107A has the rights and duties provided in Section 9-207.

* * *

Section 9-605. Unknown Debtor or Secondary Obligor.

~~(a)~~ **(a) [When no duty owed by secured party.]** A Except as provided in subsection (b), a secured party does not owe a duty based on its status as secured party:

(1) to a person that is a debtor or obligor, unless the secured party knows:

(A) that the person is a debtor or obligor;

1 (B) the identity of the person; and

2 (C) how to communicate with the person; or

3 (2) to a secured party or lienholder that has filed a financing statement against a
4 person, unless the secured party knows:

5 (A) that the person is a debtor; and

6 (B) the identity of the person.

7 **(b) [When secured party owes duty to debtor notwithstanding subsection (a).] A**
8 secured party owes a duty based on its status as a secured party to a person that is a debtor if, at
9 the time the secured party obtains control of collateral that is a controllable account, controllable
10 electronic record, or controllable payment intangible, the secured party has [notice]
11 [knowledge] knows that it will not be provided with the nature of the collateral or a system in
12 which the collateral is recorded would prevent the secured party from acquiring the knowledge
13 information specified in subsection (a)(1)(A), (B), or (C).] by the collateral, a record attached to
14 or logically associated with the collateral, or the system in which the collateral is recorded.

15 * * *

16 **~~Section 9-628. Nonliability and Limitation on Liability of Secured Party;~~**
17 **~~Liability of Secondary Obligor.~~**

18 ~~(a) [Limitation of liability of secured party for noncompliance with article.] Unless a~~
19 ~~secured party knows that a person is a debtor or obligor, knows the identity of the person, and~~
20 ~~knows how to communicate with the person:~~

21 ~~(1) the secured party is not liable to the person, or to a secured party or lienholder~~
22 ~~that has filed a financing statement against the person, for failure to comply with this article; and~~

23 ~~(2) the secured party's failure to comply with this article does not affect the~~

1 ~~liability of the person for a deficiency.~~

2 ~~(b) [Limitation of liability based on status as secured party.] A Subject to subsection~~

3 ~~(c), a secured party is not liable because of its status as secured party:~~

4 ~~(1) to a person that is a debtor or obligor, unless the secured party knows:~~

5 ~~(A) that the person is a debtor or obligor;~~

6 ~~(B) the identity of the person; and~~

7 ~~(C) how to communicate with the person; or~~

8 ~~(2) to a secured party or lienholder that has filed a financing statement against a~~
9 ~~person, unless the secured party knows:~~

10 ~~(A) that the person is a debtor; and~~

11 ~~(B) the identity of the person.~~

12 * * *

13 ~~(f) [When secured party owes duty to debtor notwithstanding subsection (b).] A~~
14 ~~secured party owes a duty based on its status as a secured party to a person that is a debtor if, at~~
15 ~~the time the secured party obtains control of a controllable account, controllable electronic~~
16 ~~record, or controllable payment intangible, the secured party has [notice] [knowledge] that the~~
17 ~~nature of the collateral or the system in which the collateral is recorded, if any, would prevent the~~
18 ~~secured party from acquiring the knowledge specified in subsection (b)(1)(A), (B), or (C).~~

19 **Reporter's Note to Draft §§ 9-605 and 9-628**

20 *Liability to unknown persons.* Practices are developing under which lenders extend
21 secured credit without knowing, or having the ability to discover, the identity of their borrowers.
22 Existing Sections 9-605 and 9-628 would excuse these secured parties from having duties to their
23 debtors, including, e.g., the duty to notify the debtor before disposing of the collateral and the
24 duty to account to the debtor for any surplus arising from a disposition. In many cases these
25 debtors may be aware that their identities are unknown to their secured parties. By failing to
26 make their identities and contact information known, these debtors are may be knowingly
27 preventing impairing the ability of their secured parties ~~from complying to comply~~ with their

1 duties under Article 9. However, such debtor complicity notwithstanding, if secured parties were
2 relieved of their duties in these circumstances, arguably it would conflict with the policy of
3 Section 9-602, which prohibits a waiver or variance of many rights of debtors and duties of
4 secured parties.

5
6 Comment 2 to Section 9-628 observes, “[w]ithout this group of provisions [in Sections 9-
7 605 and 9-628], a secured party could incur liability to unknown persons and under
8 circumstances that would not allow the secured party to protect itself.” That comment also notes
9 that “[t]he broadened definition of the term ‘debtor’ underscores the need for these provisions.”
10 For example, a debtor may dispose of collateral subject to a security interest, resulting in the
11 transferee becoming a debtor, but the secured party may have no knowledge of the disposition or
12 that the transferee has become a debtor. In that situation the secured party will have no means of
13 giving notice to or accounting to the transferee debtor. Sections 9-605 and 9-628 contemplate
14 such situations by relieving the secured party of its duties to the debtor.

15
16 The draft amendments to Sections 9-605 and 9-628 reflect the policy that a secured party
17 should not be free to avoid statutory duties or absolve itself from liability to a debtor when the
18 secured party ~~has [notice] [knowledge]~~ knows that the ~~nature of collateral, records attached to or~~
19 ~~logically associated with~~ the collateral ~~or any, and the~~ system in which the collateral is recorded
20 ~~would prevent will not provide~~ the secured party ~~from acquiring with~~ the knowledge information
21 necessary to fulfill its statutory duties. As discussed in the following paragraph, ~~this~~
22 ~~[notice] [knowledge]~~ the secured party’s knowledge that it may not be able to comply with its
23 duties enables the secured party to protect itself from being in breach of these duties. ~~The~~
24 ~~Drafting Committee will consider further whether the standard should be “notice” or~~
25 ~~“knowledge.”~~ (A person has ~~notice of a fact if, inter alia, from all the facts and circumstances~~
26 ~~known to the person at the time in question, has reason to know that it exists. Section 1-~~
27 ~~202(a)(3). A person has knowledge of knowledge of or knows~~ a fact if it has “actual knowledge.”
28 Section 1-202(b).) The exceptions from the exculpatory protections otherwise afforded to
29 secured parties are determined by the secured party’s ~~[notice] [knowledge]~~ at the time the
30 secured party obtains control of a controllable account, controllable electronic record, or
31 controllable payment intangible.

32
33 Obtaining control serves as a rough proxy for the context in which a secured party may
34 ~~have notice or knowledge~~ know that it ~~will~~ may be unable to comply with its duties, usually
35 because the transferor is ~~anonymous~~ pseudonymous. The carve-out from the exculpatory
36 protection is limited to duties owed to a debtor—the transferor of a controllable account,
37 controllable electronic record, or controllable payment intangible over which the secured party
38 obtains control. The secured party in such situations could protect itself by choosing not to enter
39 into a transaction in which it would be unable to comply with its statutory duties or by
40 conditioning its participation on disclosure of the debtor’s identity and contact information.
41 Ideally, systems providing for the transfer of controllable electronic records would provide
42 mechanisms that would permit compliance with such duties (such as methods of communication
43 and making payments that would preserve a debtor’s ~~anonymity~~ pseudonymity, where that is
44 desired). The amendments to Sections 9-605 and 9-608 provide incentives for system design
45 that would allow for compliance with Article 9 duties.

1 Secured parties that enter into transactions with ~~[notice]~~[knowledge] that they ~~will~~may
2 not be able to comply with their Article 9 duties do so at their own peril. Of course, if a secured
3 party possesses or is able to obtain the information necessary to comply with its duties, there is
4 no need for the exculpation from those duties. Note, however, that the limitation on a secured
5 party's relief from duties and liability relates only to secured transactions involving controllable
6 accounts, controllable electronic records, or controllable payment intangibles. Designing systems
7 for these assets that would afford secured parties with ~~the~~opportunities to comply with their
8 Article 9 duties, as suggested above, could eliminate the risks to secured parties and also provide
9 for the protection of debtors' rights.

10
11 * * *

12 **Section 9-610. Disposition of Collateral After Default.**

13 (a) [Disposition after default.] After default, a secured party may sell, lease, license, or
14 otherwise dispose of any or all of the collateral in its present condition or following any
15 commercially reasonable preparation or processing.

16 (b) [Commercially reasonable disposition.] Every aspect of a disposition of collateral,
17 including the method, manner, time, place, and other terms, must be commercially reasonable. If
18 commercially reasonable, a secured party may dispose of collateral by public or private
19 proceedings, by one or more contracts, as a unit or in parcels, and at any time and place and on
20 any terms.

21 (c) [Purchase by secured party.] A secured party may purchase collateral:

22 (1) at a public disposition; or

23 (2) at a private disposition only if the collateral is of a kind that is customarily
24 sold on a recognized market or the subject of widely distributed standard price quotations.

25 * * *

26 **Official Comment**

27 * * *

28 9. "Recognized Market." A "recognized market," as used in subsection (c) and Section
29 9-611(d), is one in which the items sold are fungible and prices are not subject to individual

1 negotiation. For example, the New York Stock Exchange is a recognized market. A market in
2 which prices are individually negotiated or the items are not fungible is not a recognized market,
3 even if the items are the subject of widely disseminated price guides or are disposed of through
4 dealer auctions.

5 6 Reporter's Note

7 "Recognized market" for crypto currencies, etc. The official comments to this section
8 and Sections 9-611 and 9-627 will be amended to address the concept of a "recognized market"
9 for crypto currencies and various other controllable electronic records.

10 11 Section 9-611. Notification Before Disposition of Collateral.

12 * * *

13 (b) [Notification of disposition required.] Except as otherwise provided in subsection
14 (d), a secured party that disposes of collateral under Section 9-610 shall send to the persons
15 specified in subsection (c) a reasonable authenticated notification of disposition.

16 * * *

17 (d) [Subsection (b) inapplicable: perishable collateral; recognized market.]
18 Subsection (b) does not apply if the collateral is perishable or threatens to decline speedily in
19 value or is of a type customarily sold on a recognized market.

20 * * *

21 Official Comment

22 * * *

23 7. Recognized Market; Perishable Collateral. New subsection (d) makes it clear that
24 there is no obligation to give notification of a disposition in the case of perishable collateral or
25 collateral customarily sold on a recognized market (e.g., marketable securities). Former Section
26 9-504(3) might be read (incorrectly) to relieve the secured party from its duty to notify a debtor
27 but not from its duty to notify other secured parties in connection with dispositions of such
28 collateral.

29
30 * * *

Section 9-614. Contents and Form of Notification Before Disposition of

Collateral: Consumer-Goods Transaction. In a consumer-goods transaction, the following rules apply:

* * *

NOTICE OF OUR PLAN TO SELL PROPERTY

[Name and address of any obligor who is also a debtor]

Subject: *[Identification of Transaction]*

We have your [describe collateral], because you broke promises in our agreement.

[For a public disposition:]

We will sell [describe collateral] at public sale. A sale could include a lease or license.

The sale will be held as follows:

Date: _____

Time: _____

Place: _____

You may attend the sale and bring bidders if you want.

[For a private disposition:]

We will sell [describe collateral] at private sale sometime after [date] . A sale could include a lease or license.

1 The money that we get from the sale (after paying our costs) will reduce the amount you owe. If
2 we get less money than you owe, you [will or will not, as applicable] still owe us the
3 difference. If we get more money than you owe, you will get the extra money, unless we must
4 pay it to someone else.

5 You can get the property back at any time before we sell it by paying us the full amount you owe
6 (not just the past due payments), including our expenses. To learn the exact amount you must
7 pay, call us at [telephone number].

8
9 If you want us to explain to you in [writing] [a record] how we have figured the amount that you
10 owe us, you may call us at [telephone number] [or write us at [secured party's
11 address]] and request [a written explanation] [an explanation in a record]. [We will charge
12 you \$ for the explanation if we sent you another written explanation of the amount you
13 owe us within the last six months.]

14
15 If you need more information about the sale call us at [telephone number] [or write us
16 at [secured party's address]].

17
18 We are sending this notice to the following other people who have an interest in [describe
19 collateral] or who owe money under your agreement:

20 [Names of all other debtors and obligors, if any]

21 **[End of Form]**

22 * * *

23 **Reporter's Note**

1 In furtherance of medium neutrality, indicated in square brackets are possible changes of
2 the references to “writing” and “written” to refer instead to a “record” in this section and in
3 Section 9-616. Given the applicability of these sections to consumer-goods transactions, the
4 drafting committee should consider whether these changes are appropriate.

5
6 * * *

7
8 **Section 9-616. Explanation of Calculation of Surplus or Deficiency.**

9 **(a) [Definitions.] In this section:**

10 (1) “Explanation” means a [writing] [record] that:

11 (A) states the amount of the surplus or deficiency;

12 (B) provides an explanation in accordance with subsection (c) of how the
13 secured party calculated the surplus or deficiency;

14 (C) states, if applicable, that future debits, credits, charges, including
15 additional credit service charges or interest, rebates, and expenses may affect the amount of the
16 surplus or deficiency; and

17 (D) provides a telephone number or mailing address from which additional
18 information concerning the transaction is available.

19 (2) “Request” means a record:

20 (A) authenticated by a debtor or consumer obligor;

21 (B) requesting that the recipient provide an explanation; and

22 (C) sent after disposition of the collateral under Section 9-610.

23 **(b) [Explanation of calculation.] In a consumer-goods transaction in which the debtor**
24 **is entitled to a surplus or a consumer obligor is liable for a deficiency under Section 9-615, the**
25 **secured party shall:**

26 (1) send an explanation to the debtor or consumer obligor, as applicable, after the
27 disposition and:

1 (A) before or when the secured party accounts to the debtor and pays any
2 surplus or first makes [written] demand [in a record] on the consumer obligor after the
3 disposition for payment of the deficiency; and

4 (B) within 14 days after receipt of a request; or
5 (2) in the case of a consumer obligor who is liable for a deficiency, within 14 days
6 after receipt of a request, send to the consumer obligor a record waiving the secured party's right
7 to a deficiency.

8 (c) [Required information.] To comply with subsection (a)(1)(B), [a writing] [an
9 explanation] must provide the following information in the following order:

10 (1) the aggregate amount of obligations secured by the security interest under
11 which the disposition was made, and, if the amount reflects a rebate of unearned interest or credit
12 service charge, an indication of that fact, calculated as of a specified date:

13 (A) if the secured party takes or receives possession of the collateral after
14 default, not more than 35 days before the secured party takes or receives possession; or

15 (B) if the secured party takes or receives possession of the collateral
16 before default or does not take possession of the collateral, not more than 35 days before the
17 disposition;

18 (2) the amount of proceeds of the disposition;

19 (3) the aggregate amount of the obligations after deducting the amount of
20 proceeds;

21 (4) the amount, in the aggregate or by type, and types of expenses, including
22 expenses of retaking, holding, preparing for disposition, processing, and disposing of the

1 collateral, and attorney's fees secured by the collateral which are known to the secured party and
2 relate to the current disposition;

3 (5) the amount, in the aggregate or by type, and types of credits, including rebates
4 of interest or credit service charges, to which the obligor is known to be entitled and which are
5 not reflected in the amount in paragraph (1); and

6 (6) the amount of the surplus or deficiency.

7 * * *

8 **Section 9-627. Determination of Whether Conduct Was Commercially**
9 **Reasonable.**

10 * * *

11 (b) [Dispositions that are commercially reasonable.] A disposition of collateral is
12 made in a commercially reasonable manner if the disposition is made:

13 (1) in the usual manner on any recognized market;

14 (2) at the price current in any recognized market at the time of the disposition; or

15 (3) otherwise in conformity with reasonable commercial practices among dealers
16 in the type of property that was the subject of the disposition.

17 * * *

18 **Official Comment**

19 * * *

20 4. "Recognized Market." As in Sections 9-610(c) and 9-611(d), the concept of a "recognized
21 market" in subsections (b)(1) and (2) is quite limited; it applies only to markets in which there
22 are standardized price quotations for property that is essentially fungible, such as stock
23 exchanges.

24
25 **Section 9-628. Nonliability and Limitation on Liability of Secured Party;**
26 **Liability of Secondary Obligor.**

1 (a) [Limitation of liability of secured party for noncompliance with article.] Unless
2 Subject to subsection (f), unless a secured party knows that a person is a debtor or obligor,
3 knows the identity of the person, and knows how to communicate with the person:

4 (1) the secured party is not liable to the person, or to a secured party or lienholder
5 that has filed a financing statement against the person, for failure to comply with this article; and

6 (2) the secured party's failure to comply with this article does not affect the
7 liability of the person for a deficiency.

8 (b) [Limitation of liability based on status as secured party.] A Subject to subsection
9 (f), a secured party is not liable because of its status as secured party:

10 (1) to a person that is a debtor or obligor, unless the secured party knows:

11 (A) that the person is a debtor or obligor;

12 (B) the identity of the person; and

13 (C) how to communicate with the person; or

14 (2) to a secured party or lienholder that has filed a financing statement against a
15 person, unless the secured party knows:

16 (A) that the person is a debtor; and

17 (B) the identity of the person.

18 * * *

19 (f) [When secured party owes duty to debtor notwithstanding subsection (b).] A
20 secured party owes a duty based on its status as a secured party to a person that is a debtor if, at
21 the time the secured party obtains control of collateral that is a controllable account, controllable
22 electronic record, or controllable payment intangible, the secured party knows that it will not be
23 provided with the information specified in subsection (b)(1)(A), (B), or (C) by the collateral, a

record attached to or logically associated with the collateral, or the system in which the collateral is recorded.

Reporter's Note

See the Reporter's Note to Draft § 9-605.

* * *

ARTICLE 12

CONTROLLABLE ELECTRONIC RECORDS

Reporter's Prefatory Note to Article 12

1. *Introduction to controllable electronic records.* New UCC Article 12, which deals with controllable electronic records, and the conforming amendments to Articles 1 and 9 are a major part of the effort to adapt the UCC to emerging technologies as they might affect electronic commerce.

Article 12 creates a legal regime that is meant to apply more broadly than to electronic (intangible) assets that are created using existing technologies such as distributed ledger technology (DLT), including blockchain technology, which powers transactions in bitcoin and other digital assets. It also aspires to apply to electronic assets that may be created using technologies that have yet to be developed, or even imagined.

The adoption of DLT has underscored two important trends in electronic commerce. First, people have begun to assign economic value to some electronic records that bear no relationship to extrinsic rights and interests. For example, without any law or binding agreement, people around the world have agreed to treat virtual currencies such as bitcoin (or, more precisely “transaction outputs” generated by the Bitcoin protocol) as a medium of exchange and store of value. Second, people are using the creation or transfer of electronic records to transfer rights to receive payment, rights to receive performance of other obligations (*e.g.*, services or delivery of goods), and other interests in personal and real property.

These trends will inevitably result in disputes among claimants to electronic records and their related rights and other benefits. Uncertainty as to the criteria for resolving these claims creates commercial risk. The magnitude of these risks will grow as these trends continue.

As explained in more detail below, draft Article 12 is designed to reduce these risks by providing the legal rules governing the transfer—both outright and for security—of interests in some, but not all, electronic records (*controllable electronic records*). These rules specify the rights in a controllable electronic record that a purchaser would acquire. Many systems for transferring controllable electronic records are pseudonymous, so that the transferee of a controllable electronic record is unable to verify the identity of the transferor or the source of the

1 transferor's title. Accordingly, the Article 12 rules would make controllable electronic records
2 negotiable, in the sense that a good faith purchaser for value would take a controllable electronic
3 record free of third-party claims of a property interest in the controllable electronic record.
4

5 Experience with DLT and other records-management systems has established some
6 general functions required for electronic records to serve as an effective and reliable means of
7 transferring economic value.
8

- 9 • The electronic record must have some “use” that one person can enjoy to the
10 exclusion of all others, *e.g.*, the power to “spend” a bitcoin (or, more precisely,
11 the power to include an unspent transaction output (a UTXO) in a message that
12 the Bitcoin protocol will record to its blockchain).
13
- 14 • A person must be able to transfer to another person this exclusive power to use
15 the electronic record. To remain exclusive, the transfer must divest the transferor
16 of the power to use the electronic record.
17
- 18 • A person must be able to demonstrate to others that the person has the power to
19 “use” the electronic record.
20

21 As discussed in the Reporter's Note to draft § 12-105, these functions form the basis of
22 the Article 12 concept of *control*. To receive the benefits of negotiability and take free of third-
23 party claims of a property interest in a controllable electronic record, a person must have control
24 of the controllable electronic record. In addition, control serves as a method of perfection of a
25 security interest in a controllable electronic record and as a condition for achieving a non-
26 temporal priority of a security interest. In this context, it may be useful to think of control as the
27 rough functional equivalent of possession of tangible personal property such as goods.
28

29 Article 12 governs the rights of transacting parties and the rights of persons that might be
30 affected by the transactions. With the important exception of certain rights to payment evidenced
31 by a controllable electronic record (discussed below), Article 12 does not govern assets other
32 than controllable electronic records. Like the UCC in general, Article 12 is not a regulatory
33 statute. The fact that an asset is or is not a controllable electronic record under the UCC would
34 not necessarily affect the application of laws regulating securities, commodities, or money
35 transmission.
36

37 2. *What is the scope of draft Article 12?* 38

39 Article 12 applies to *controllable electronic records*. Controllable electronic records are a
40 subset of what often are referred to as digital assets. Article 12 is designed to work for both
41 technologies that are known and those that may be developed in the future. Whether an asset is a
42 controllable electronic record (and therefore within the scope of Article 12) depends on whether
43 the characteristics of the asset and the protocols of any system on which the asset is recorded
44 make it suitable for the application of Article 12's substantive rules. The nature of electronic
45 commerce is constantly changing. For this reason, the technology on which an asset depends, the

1 type of asset, and the prevailing use of the asset are all irrelevant to whether the asset is a
2 controllable electronic record.

3
4 To determine whether Article 12 applies to a particular asset, *e.g.*, bitcoin, one must
5 determine whether the asset falls within the definition of *controllable electronic record*. A
6 controllable electronic record is a *record*, as the UCC defines the term. A *record* is information
7 that is retrievable in perceivable form.⁶ A *controllable electronic record* is a record that is stored
8 in an electronic medium⁷ and that can be subjected to *control*, as defined in draft § 12-105. An
9 electronic record that cannot be subjected to control under draft § 12-105 is outside the scope of
10 Article 12.

11
12 The meaning of *control* in the UCC depends on the type of property involved.⁸ The
13 Reporter's Note accompanying draft § 12-105 explains the requirements for obtaining control of
14 a controllable electronic record. For present purposes, it is sufficient to think of bitcoin as the
15 prototypical controllable electronic record.

16
17 The existing law that governs control for some types of electronic records (including
18 provisions on control for some types that are proposed to be modified in this draft) is sufficient.
19 These electronic records are excluded from Article 12.⁹

20 21 3. *What are the substantive provisions of Article 12?*

22
23 The principal function of Article 12 is to specify the rights of a *purchaser* of a
24 controllable electronic record. A purchaser is a person that acquires an interest in property by a
25 voluntary transaction, such as a sale.¹⁰ Law other than Article 12 would determine whether a
26 person acquires any rights in a controllable electronic record and so would be eligible to be a
27 purchaser.

28 Draft § 12-104 adopts the “shelter” principle, under which a purchaser of a controllable
29 electronic record acquires whatever rights the transferor had or had power to transfer. This rule
30 appears in Article 2 with respect to goods and Article 8 with respect to securities.¹¹

31
⁶ See UCC § 1-201(b)(31).

⁷ See draft § 12-102(a)(2) (defining “electronic record”).

⁸ *E.g.*, UCC § 7-106 (electronic documents of title); § 8-106 (four different types of investment property, each with a different definition of “control”); § 9-104 (deposit accounts); § 9-105 (electronic chattel paper).

⁹ See draft § 12-102(a)(1) (defining “controllable electronic record”).

¹⁰ “‘Purchase’ means taking by sale, lease, discount, negotiation, mortgage, pledge, lien, security interest, issue or reissue, gift, or any other voluntary transaction creating an interest in property.” UCC § 1-201(b)(29).

¹¹ UCC § 2-403(1) provides, “A purchaser of goods acquires all title which his transferor had or had power to transfer” UCC § 8-302(a) provides, “a purchaser of a certificated or uncertificated security acquires all rights in the security that the transferor had or had power to transfer.” Other UCC provisions also reflect the shelter principle. See, *e.g.*, UCC § 3-203(b) (concerning negotiable instruments); UCC § 7-504(a) (concerning documents of title).

1 The ability to take a controllable electronic record free of third-party property claims
2 appears to be necessary for a controllable electronic record to have commercial utility. As is the
3 case with Articles 2, 3, 7, and 9, Article 12 would facilitate commerce by affording to certain
4 good-faith purchasers for value greater rights than their transferors had or had power to
5 transfer.¹² Draft Article 12 refers to these purchasers as *qualifying purchasers*. Qualifying
6 purchasers are purchasers that obtain control of a controllable electronic record for value, in
7 good faith, and without notice of any claim of a property interest in the controllable electronic
8 record. Like a holder in due course of a negotiable instrument, a qualifying purchaser of a
9 controllable electronic record takes the controllable electronic record free of property claims.

10
11 Consider the case in which *B* contracts to buy bitcoin from *S*. Assume that *S* is the owner
12 of the bitcoin.

- 13
14 • Law other than Article 12 generally would determine whether *S* is the owner of
15 the bitcoin.
- 16
17 • Law other than Article 12 would resolve issues concerning the formation of the
18 contract of sale between *B* and *S* and the obligations of the parties under the
19 contract.
- 20
21 • Law other than Article 12 would determine what steps are necessary for *B* to
22 acquire rights in the bitcoin.¹³
- 23
24 • By acquiring rights in the bitcoin by sale, *B* would become a *purchaser* of the
25 bitcoin within the meaning of UCC Article 1.
- 26
27 • Article 12 provides that if *B* becomes a purchaser, *B* will acquire whatever rights
28 *S* had or had power to transfer. As a general matter, law other than Article 12
29 would define these rights. *B* would acquire these rights regardless of whether *B*
30 obtained control of the bitcoin.

31
32 Now assume that *S* is a hacker, who acquired the bitcoin illegally from the owner, *O*.

- 33
34 • Just as a buyer of goods can obtain possession from a seller that has no rights in
35 the goods, *B* can obtain control of the bitcoin, even if *S* “stole” it from the owner.
- 36
37 • If *B* obtains control of the bitcoin for value, in good faith, and without notice of
38 any claim of a property interest, *B* would be a *qualifying purchaser*.
- 39
40 • Even if *B* would not have acquired any rights in the bitcoin under non-Article 12

¹² Article 8 also provides for certain purchasers for value to take greater rights but does not contain a good-faith requirement. See UCC § 8-303.

¹³ Law other than Article 12 includes UCC Article 9. Thus, Article 9 would determine whether a security interest attaches to a controllable electronic record. More generally, Article 9 governs any conflict between Article 9 and Article 12. Draft § 12-102(b).

1 law, as an Article 12 qualifying purchaser, *B* would acquire the bitcoin free of all
2 claims of a property interest in the bitcoin. In the unlikely event that *O* could
3 locate *B*, *B* would defeat *O*'s claim of ownership and own the bitcoin free and
4 clear. (The same result would obtain if *B* bought a negotiable instrument from a
5 thief under circumstances where *B* became a holder in due course.)
6

7 4. How would Article 12 deal with rights or property that is linked to a controllable
8 electronic record?
9

10 a. The general rules.
11

12 Recall that a controllable electronic record is a record, *i.e.*, information. Some records
13 have what one might call "inherent value" solely because the market treats them as having value
14 Bitcoin would be an example of such a record. Bitcoin can be exchanged (sold) for cash or other
15 valuable assets. Or, the owner of bitcoin can hold the bitcoin as an investment.
16

17 The value of many (if not most) records, however, is as evidence of the rights of the
18 parties to a transaction. In these situations, it is essential to differentiate between the *record* and
19 the *rights* that are evidenced by the record.
20

21 Suppose, for example, that *S* and *B* enter into a written contract for the sale of 100 air
22 purifiers. The contract provides that at a specified time in the future, *S* is to deliver the goods and
23 *B* is to pay for them. *B* may sell (assign) to *P* the right to receive delivery of the goods from *S*. *P*
24 has acquired a valuable asset, *i.e.*, the right to receive delivery.
25

26 In contrast, if *B* sells to *P* only the paper (record) on which the contract is written, *P*
27 might or might not acquire the right to delivery of the goods, depending on whether applicable
28 law treats the sale of the paper as an assignment of the right to delivery. *P* would become the
29 owner of the paper in any event, but the paper itself may be of little value.
30

31 If the contract for the sale of air purifiers were electronic rather than written, the same
32 analysis would apply. The *right* evidenced by the electronic record (*i.e.*, *B*'s right to receive
33 delivery from *S*) would be the valuable asset, not the *record* itself.
34

35 Suppose that the contract of sale between *B* and *S* is evidenced by a controllable
36 electronic record that *B* sells to *P*. Under draft § 12-104(d), *P* would acquire all rights *in the*
37 *controllable electronic record* that the transferor (*B*) had or had power to transfer. If *P* obtains
38 control of the controllable electronic record for value, in good faith, and without notice of any
39 claim of a property right in the controllable electronic record, *P* will become a *qualifying*
40 *purchaser* and, as such, would acquire its rights *in the controllable electronic record* free of any
41 claim of a property right under draft § 12-104.
42

43 But the controllable electronic record itself may or may not be a valuable asset. In this
44 example, unlike bitcoin, the record would have value to *P* only if by virtue of acquiring rights in
45 the controllable electronic record, *P* would also acquire the right to receive delivery of the goods
46 from *S*.

1 Article 12 leaves to other law the question whether *P*'s acquisition of rights in the
2 controllable electronic record gives *P* the right to receive delivery of the goods. We would
3 typically expect that under other law *P* would not acquire the right to receive the goods merely
4 by acquiring rights in the controllable electronic record, any more than *P* would have acquired
5 the right to receive the goods if the record were in paper form and physically delivered to *P*.
6

7 Suppose, however, that other law does provide that, by acquiring the controllable
8 electronic record, *P* would acquire the right to receive delivery of the goods from *S*. Suppose also
9 that *P* becomes a qualifying purchaser of the controllable electronic record. As we have seen, as
10 a qualifying purchaser, *P* would take its rights *in the controllable electronic record* free of
11 property claims. But even though under non-Article 12 law *P* would (as posited) acquire the right
12 to receive delivery of the goods, *P* would not acquire that right free of property claims unless
13 non-Article 12 law were to provide otherwise.
14

15 *b. The exceptions: controllable accounts and controllable payment intangibles.*
16

17 As a general rule, draft Article 12 applies to records and not to rights evidenced by
18 records (or to rights that records purport to evidence). Law other than Article 12 would
19 determine what steps must be taken for a person to acquire an interest in a controllable electronic
20 record and the rights, if any, that the person acquires in other property as a result of acquiring an
21 interest in the record. This "other" law includes UCC Article 9.
22

23 The draft provides an important exception to this general rule. The exception concerns
24 rights to payment (specifically, accounts and payment intangibles) that are evidenced by a
25 controllable electronic record that provides that the obligor (account debtor) undertakes to pay
26 the person that has control of the controllable electronic record. These rights to payment are
27 referred to as "controllable accounts" and "controllable payment intangibles."¹⁴
28

29 The draft amends several sections of Article 9 to deal with other aspects of security
30 interests in controllable accounts and controllable payment intangibles. The Reporter's Prefatory
31 Note to Article 9 Amendments and the Reporter's Notes to those sections discuss those
32 amendments.
33

34 Finally, Section 12-107 provides rules on governing law. The general rule under
35 subsection (a) is that a "controllable record's jurisdiction" governs matters covered by Article 12.
36 The controllable record's jurisdiction is determined by an express provision in the record or in
37 the system in which the record is recorded. If not so designated, it is determined based on the
38 designation of the law governing the record or the system. Absent such designations, at the
39 bottom of this "waterfall" of alternatives, the governing law will be that of the ~~jurisdiction of the~~
40 ~~location of the transferor-~~ District of Columbia. Subsection (b) provides an exception for the
41 rights and duties of account debtors under draft § 12-106 if an agreement between the account
42 debtor and an assignor of the record provides for the law of another jurisdiction to govern those
43 rights and duties.
44

¹⁴ See draft § 9-102(b) (defining "controllable account" and "controllable payment intangible").

Section 12-101. Title. This article may be cited as Uniform Commercial Code—
Controllable Electronic Records.

Official Comment

Subsection headings are not a part of the official text itself and have not been approved by the sponsors.

Section 12-102. Definitions.

(a) **[Article 12 definitions.]** In this article:

(1) “Controllable electronic record” means a record stored in an electronic medium that can be subjected to control under Section 12-105. The term does not include a deposit account, electronic copy of a record evidencing chattel paper, electronic document of title, electronic money, investment property, or a transferable record.

(2) “Qualifying purchaser” means a purchaser of a controllable electronic record or an interest in the controllable electronic record that obtains control of the controllable electronic record for value, in good faith, and without notice of a claim of a property right in the controllable electronic record.

(3) “Transferable record” means:

(A) “Transferable ~~records~~ record” as defined in the Electronic Signatures in Global and National Commerce Act, 15 U.S.C. Section ~~7021(a)(1)~~7001 et seq., as amended~~+~~; or

(B) “Transferable record” as defined in [cite to Uniform Electronic Transactions Act Section 16(a)].

(4) “Value” has the meaning provided in Section 3-303(a).

(b) [Definitions in Article 9.] The definitions in Article 9 of “account debtor”, “authenticate”, “controllable account”, “controllable payment intangible”, “chattel paper”, “deposit account”, “electronic money”, and “investment property” apply to this article.

Legislative Note: *It is the intent of this act to incorporate future amendments to the federal law cited in subsection (a)(3)(A). A state in which the constitution or other law does not permit incorporation of future amendments when a federal statute is incorporated into state law should omit the phrase “, as amended”. A state in which, in the absence of a legislative declaration, future amendments are incorporated into state law also should omit the phrase.*

In subsection (a)(3)(B), the state should cite to the state’s version of the Uniform Electronic Transactions Act Section 16(a) or comparable state law.

Reporter’s Note

1. “Controllable electronic record.” To be a “controllable electronic record” within the scope of Article 12, an electronic record must be susceptible of control under Section 12-105. Unlike “transferable records” under the Electronic Signatures in Global and National Commerce Act or a “transferable record” under the Uniform Electronic Transactions Act, a record can be a controllable electronic record under Article 12 in the absence of an agreement to that effect.

The provisions of Article 12 do not apply to certain types of electronic records, and the definition has been limited accordingly. Article 12 does not, however, limit the extent to which property, including an electronic record, may be a financial asset under Article 8, including as a result of an express agreement between a securities intermediary and another person to treat such property held by the securities intermediary as a “financial asset” credited to a securities account pursuant to Section 8-102(a)(9)(iii). See Section 8-102, amendments to official comments.

This definition uses the term “record,” defined in Section 1-201 to include “information . . . that is stored in an electronic or other medium and is retrievable in perceivable form,” and the ULC’s standard definition of “electronic,” which this draft proposes to add to Section 1-201.

2. “Qualifying purchaser.” The conditions for becoming a qualifying purchaser were drawn from Article 3. More specifically, the conditions for becoming a qualifying purchaser were drawn from Section 3-302(a)(2), which defines “holder in due course” of a negotiable instrument. Among these conditions is that a person take the instrument “for value.” As Reporter’s Note 9 to Section 12-104 explains, the concept of value in Article 3 differs from the concept of value that is generally applicable in the UCC. Article 12 adopts the Article 3 concept.

Under Section 12-104(a), not only a purchaser of a controllable electronic record but also a purchaser of a controllable account or controllable payment intangible may be a qualifying purchaser. Moreover, a purchaser of a controllable account or a controllable payment intangible may be a qualified purchaser even if it does not also purchase the controllable electronic record

1 that evidences the account of payment intangible. However, to obtain control of the controllable
2 account or controllable payment intangible, a requirement for of qualifying purchaser status, the
3 purchaser must obtain control of that controllable electronic record. Draft § 9-107A.

4
5 3. *“Transferable record.”* This definition facilitates the exclusion of transferable records
6 from the definition of controllable electronic records.

7
8 4. *“Value.”* The concept of value in Section 3-303 is narrower than the generally
9 applicable concept in Section 1-201. Reporter’s Note 9 to draft § 12-104 explains the difference
10 between the two concepts and that the draft adopts the Article 3 approach.

11
12 **Section 12-103. Scope Relationship to Article 9 and Consumer Laws.**

13 (a) **[Article 9 governs in case of conflict.]** If there is conflict between this article and
14 Article 9, Article 9 governs.

15 (b) **[Applicable consumer law and other laws.]** A transaction subject to this article is
16 subject to any applicable rule of law that establishes a different rule for consumers and [insert
17 reference to (i) any other statute or regulation that regulates the rates, charges, agreements, and
18 practices for loans, credit sales, or other extensions of credit and (ii) any consumer-protection
19 statute or regulation].

20 **Reporter’s Note**

21
22 1. *Source of these provisions.* Subsection (a) follows Section 3-102(b). As is the case
23 with respect to Article 3, Article 9 would defer to Article 12 in some instances. *See* subsection
24 (a) and draft § 9-331. Subsection (b) is copied from Section 9-201.

25
26 2. *Controllable accounts and controllable payment intangibles.* As to controllable
27 accounts and controllable payment intangibles, see Reporter’s Note 4 to draft § 9-102.

28
29 **Section 12-104. Rights in Controllable Account, Controllable Electronic Record,**
30 **and Controllable Payment Intangible.**

31 (a) **[Applicability of section to controllable account and controllable payment**
32 **intangible.]** This section applies to the acquisition and purchase of rights in a controllable
33 account or controllable payment intangible, including the rights and benefits of a purchaser and a

1 qualifying purchaser ~~and~~ under subsections ~~(e)~~, ~~(d)~~, (e), and ~~(f)~~g, in the same manner this section
2 applies to a controllable electronic record.

3 ~~(b)~~ (b) For purposes of determining whether a purchaser of a controllable account or
4 a controllable payment intangible is a qualifying purchaser, the purchaser obtains control of the
5 account or payment intangible if it obtains control of the controllable electronic record that
6 evidences the account or payment intangible.

7 (c) **[Applicability of other law to acquisition of rights.]** Except as provided in this
8 section, law other than this article determines whether a person acquires a right in a controllable
9 electronic record and the right the person acquires.

10 ~~(d)~~ **[Shelter principle and purchase of limited interest.]** A purchaser of a controllable
11 electronic record acquires all rights in the controllable electronic record that the transferor had or
12 had power to transfer, except that a purchaser of a limited interest in a controllable electronic
13 record acquires rights only to the extent of the interest purchased.

14 ~~(e)~~ **[Rights of qualifying purchaser.]** A qualifying purchaser acquires its rights in the
15 controllable electronic record free of a claim of a property right in the controllable electronic
16 record.

17 ~~(f)~~ **[Limitation of rights of qualifying purchaser in other property.]** Except as
18 provided in subsections (a) and ~~(d)~~e for controllable accounts and controllable payment
19 intangibles or law other than this article, a qualifying purchaser takes a right to payment, right to
20 performance, or interest in property evidenced by the controllable electronic record subject to a
21 claim of a property right in the right to payment, right to performance, or other interest in
22 property.

(fg) [No-action protection for qualifying purchaser.] An action may not be asserted against a qualifying purchaser based on both a purchase by the qualifying purchaser of a controllable electronic record and a claim of a property right in another controllable electronic record, [whether framed in conversion, replevin, constructive trust, equitable lien, or other theory] ~~[regardless of how the action is framed].~~

(gh) [Filing not notice.] Filing of a financing statement under Article 9 is not notice of a claim of a property right in a controllable electronic record.

Reporter's Note

1. *Source of these provisions.* Subsection (b) derives from Section 3-302(a)(2) (defining “holder in due course”).

Subsection (ed) derives from Section 2-403(1) (concerning the rights of a purchaser).

Subsection (~~de~~) derives from Sections 3-306 (concerning the rights of a holder in due course of an instrument) and 8-303 (concerning rights of a protected purchaser of a security).

Subsection (fg) derives from Section 8-502 (protecting entitlement holders) and its applicability to a qualifying purchaser derives from Sections 3-302(b) (concerning notice of a claim) and 3-306 (protecting holder in due course).

Subsection (gh) derives from Section 9-331(c) (filing under Article 9 does not provide notice for purposes of protections of purchasers under other articles).

2. *Applicability of section to controllable accounts and controllable payment intangibles.* Under subsection (a), the provisions of this section apply to controllable accounts and controllable payment intangibles in the same manner that they apply to controllable electronic records. For example, a qualifying purchaser of a controllable account that obtains control of the controllable electronic record that evidences the account (and who thereby obtains control of the account under Section 9-107A) would take the account free of conflicting rights in the account under subsection (d). Under subsection (b), for purposes of determining whether a purchaser of a controllable account or controllable payment intangible obtains control, the purchaser obtains control by obtaining control of the controllable electronic record that evidences the account or payment intangible. Unless otherwise specified or the context otherwise requires, references to a controllable electronic record in the Reporter's Notes in this Article also refer to a controllable account or controllable payment intangible.

3. *Applicability of other law.* As a general matter, this section leaves to other law the resolution of questions concerning the transfer of rights in a controllable electronic record, such

1 as the acts that must be taken to effectuate a transfer of rights and the scope of the rights that a
2 transferee acquires. *See* subsection (b). Subsections (ed) through (gh) contain important
3 exceptions to this subsection.
4

5 **Example:** *A* creates a controllable electronic record. Other law would determine what
6 rights *A* has in the controllable electronic record. *A* and *B* agree to the sale of the
7 controllable electronic record to *B*. Other law would determine what steps need to be
8 taken for *B* to acquire rights in the controllable electronic record. Once *B* acquires those
9 rights, *B* would be a purchaser (as defined in Section 1-201), whose rights would be
10 determined either by subsection (bd) or subsections (ee) and (dg), depending on whether
11 *B* was a qualifying purchaser.
12

13 The “law other than this article” that may apply to the transfer of rights in a controllable
14 electronic record under subsection (bc) includes UCC Article 9. Section 9-203 would apply, for
15 example, to determine whether a purported secured party acquired an enforceable security
16 interest in a controllable electronic record.
17

18 4. *Purchaser and transferor under subsection (c): resulting controllable electronic*
19 *records.* Subsection (ed) sets forth the familiar “shelter” principle, under which a purchaser of a
20 controllable electronic record acquires whatever rights the transferor had or had power to
21 transfer. However, in some cases the controllable electronic record that is acquired by the
22 purchaser will not be the “same” controllable electronic record that was transferred by the
23 transferor. Such a transfer might involve the elimination of a “transferred” controllable electronic
24 record and the resulting and corresponding derivative creation and acquisition of a new
25 controllable electronic record. An example of such a resulting controllable electronic record is
26 the unspent transaction output (UTXO) generated by a transaction in bitcoin. Subsection (d)
27 should be construed broadly to encompass such transfers and resulting derivative controllable
28 electronic records acquired by a purchaser. Because subsection (ed) addresses the rights of a
29 purchaser in the “purchased” asset and not the “transferred” asset, this construction is wholly
30 consistent with the statutory text.
31

32 5. *Nonpurchaser having control.* Under draft § 12-105, a person may have control of a
33 controllable electronic record even if the person has no property interest in the controllable
34 electronic record. A person that has control of, but no interest in, a controllable electronic record
35 would not be a purchaser of the controllable electronic record and so would not be eligible to be
36 a qualifying purchaser under this section.
37

38 **Example:** Debtor granted to Secured Party a security interest in all Debtor’s existing and
39 after-acquired accounts, chattel paper, and payment intangibles. Secured Party perfected
40 its security interest in a specific controllable account by obtaining control of the
41 controllable electronic record that evidences the controllable account. *See* draft § 9-107A.
42

43 Because Debtor’s security agreement does not cover controllable electronic records,
44 Secured Party would have no interest in the controllable electronic record. Accordingly,
45 Secured Party would not be a purchaser of the controllable electronic record. However, as
46 a purchaser of the controllable accounts and controllable payment intangibles, Secured

1 Party could benefit from the take-free rule in subsection (de) (discussed in Note 6).
2 Having taken control of the specific controllable account, Secured Party may be a
3 qualifying purchaser. Even if Secured Party were not a qualifying purchaser of the
4 controllable account, its security interest in the account over which it obtained control
5 would, however, have priority over a conflicting security interest that was perfected by a
6 method other than control. *See* draft § 9-326A.
7

8 6. *The take-free rule.* Subsection (de) makes controllable electronic records and, under
9 subsection (a), controllable accounts and controllable payment intangibles, highly negotiable.
10 Subsection (d) derives from Section 3-306, under which a holder in due course takes a negotiable
11 instrument free of a claim of a property right in the instrument. A qualifying purchaser of a
12 controllable electronic record, controllable account, or controllable payment intangible takes free
13 of all claims of a property right in the purchased controllable electronic record, account, or
14 payment intangible.
15

16 As a general matter, law other than Article 12 would determine whether any particular
17 transaction creates a property interest in a controllable electronic record. *See* subsection (bc).
18 The applicable law may provide that a hacker, who is essentially a thief, acquires no rights in a
19 “stolen” controllable electronic record. Even if this is the case, subsection (de) would enable a
20 purchaser that obtains control from a hacker and that otherwise meets the definition of
21 “qualifying purchaser” (for value, in good faith, and without notice of property claims) to take
22 the controllable electronic record (or any purchased controllable account or controllable payment
23 intangible) free of property claims. A person in control of a controllable electronic record
24 therefore has the power, even if not the right, to transfer rights in the record to a qualifying
25 purchaser. Of course, if the qualifying purchaser is a secured party whose security interest
26 secures an obligation, the purchaser would take free of the conflicting property right only to the
27 extent of the obligation secured. *See* subsection (c) (purchaser of a limited interest); *cf.* UCC § 3-
28 302(e).
29

30 7. *Subsection (fg)—the “no-action” rule.* Subsection (fg) applies in the situation
31 (explained in Note 4) in which the “resulting” controllable electronic record (or controllable
32 account or controllable payment intangible) purchased by a qualifying purchaser is not the
33 “same” record, account, or payment intangible that was transferred. In such a situation, a person
34 claiming a property right in the transferred asset may assert a claim against a purchaser of the
35 “resulting” asset even though the claimant is *not* asserting a claim of a *property right* in the
36 purchased asset. If the claim is based on both the purchaser’s purchase of the acquired asset and
37 the claimant’s rights in the transferred asset, subsection (fg) protects the qualified purchaser from
38 liability to the claimant based on any theory. The qualified purchaser’s protection from the
39 assertion of such a claim does not depend on any proof that the purchased asset is somehow
40 “traceable” to the transferred asset.
41

42 If instead, such a claimant were to assert a claim based on a property right in the
43 purchased asset, then the qualified purchaser would take free of that claim under subsection (de).
44 Subsection (de) applies whether or not the acquired asset is the same asset that was transferred.
45

46 8. *“Tethered” assets.* Certain controllable electronic records may carry with them rights
to other assets, *e.g.*, goods or rights to payment. By its terms, the take-free rule in subsection (de)

1 applies to controllable electronic records (and, under subsection (a), controllable accounts and
2 controllable payment intangibles). One might argue that the inclusion of controllable accounts
3 and controllable payment intangibles in the scope of subsection (~~de~~) is unnecessary. By taking a
4 controllable electronic record free of property claims, the argument would be that a person takes
5 not only the controllable electronic record itself but also all rights that are “carried” in the
6 controllable electronic record free and clear.

7
8 *Subsection (ef) defeats that argument.* It limits the application of the take-free rule in
9 subsection (~~de~~) to controllable electronic records and, through the application of subsection (a),
10 controllable accounts and controllable payment intangibles. Under subsection (~~ef~~), except as
11 provided in subsection (a) and (~~de~~), a qualifying purchaser takes rights to payment (other than
12 controllable accounts and controllable payment intangibles), rights to performance, and interests
13 in property that are evidenced by a controllable electronic record subject to third-party property
14 claims, unless law other than Article 12 provides to the contrary. The reference in subsection (~~ef~~)
15 to “law other than this article” contemplates that another article of the UCC might provide a
16 contrary rule for some types of property that might be tethered to a controllable electronic record.

17
18 9. *Creating the functional equivalent of a negotiable instrument.* Two defining
19 characteristics of an Article 3 negotiable instrument are that a holder in due course (i) takes free
20 of claims of a property or possessory right to the instrument (Section 3-306) and (ii) takes free of
21 most defenses and claims in recoupment (Section 3-305). Article 3 applies only to written
22 instruments. This draft provides a method for reaching a similar result with respect to
23 controllable accounts and controllable payment intangibles.

24
25 As regards the first characteristic, a qualifying purchaser could acquire the controllable
26 account or controllable payment intangible free of any claim of a property interest. As regards
27 the second characteristic, the definition of “qualifying purchaser” omits some of the conditions
28 for becoming a holder in due course. For example, to qualify as a holder in due course, a holder
29 must take “without notice that any party has a defense or claim in recoupment” Section 3-
30 302(a)(2)(vi). A controllable electronic record is information; there are no parties to a
31 controllable electronic record. However, there are parties to a controllable account or
32 controllable payment intangible. Accordingly, Sections 9-404 and 9-403 would determine
33 whether a purchaser of the controllable account or controllable payment intangible takes free of a
34 defense. Section 9-403 ordinarily would give effect to the account debtor’s agreement not to
35 assert claims or defenses.

36
37 Section 9-403 adopts the meaning of value in Section 3-303, as does Article 12. The
38 concept of value in Section 3-303 is narrower than the concept in Section 1-204, which applies
39 generally to UCC transactions. Under Section 1-204, a person gives value for rights if the person
40 acquires them in return for a promise. However, under Section 3-303, if a negotiable instrument
41 is issued or transferred for a promise of performance, the instrument is transferred for value only
42 to the extent that the promise has been performed.

43
44 **Section 12-105. Control of Controllable Electronic Record.**

1 (a) **[General rule: control of controllable electronic record.]** A person has control of a
2 controllable electronic record if:

3 (1) the electronic record, a record attached to or logically associated with the
4 electronic record, or a system in which the electronic record is recorded gives the person:

5 (A) the power to avail itself of substantially all the benefit from the
6 electronic record; and

7 (B) exclusive power, subject to subsection (b), to:

8 (i) prevent others from availing themselves of substantially all the
9 benefit from the electronic record; and

10 (ii) transfer control of the electronic record to another person or
11 cause another person to obtain control of another controllable electronic record as a result of the
12 transfer of the electronic record; and

13 (2) the electronic record, a record attached to or logically associated with the
14 electronic record, or a system in which the electronic record is recorded enables the person
15 readily to identify itself in any way, including by name, identifying number, cryptographic key,
16 office, or account number, as having the powers specified in paragraph (1).

17 (b) **[Control through another person.]** A person has control of a controllable electronic
18 record if another person, other than the transferor of an interest in the electronic record:

19 (1) has control of the electronic record and acknowledges that it has control on
20 behalf of the person, or

21 (2) obtains control of the electronic record after having acknowledged that it will
22 obtain control of the electronic record on behalf of the person.

1 ~~(c)~~ (c) [No requirement to acknowledge.] A person that has control under this
2 section is not required to acknowledge that it has control on behalf of another person.

3 (d) [No duties or confirmation.] If a person acknowledges that it has or will obtain
4 control on behalf of another person, unless the person otherwise agrees or law other than this
5 article otherwise provides, the person does not owe any duty to the other person and is not
6 required to confirm the acknowledgment to another person.

7 (e) [Meaning of exclusive.] A power specified in subsection (a)(1) is exclusive, even if:
8 (1) the controllable electronic record, a record attached to or logically associated
9 with the electronic record, or a system in which the electronic record is recorded limits the use of
10 the electronic record or has a protocol programmed to cause a change, including a transfer or loss
11 of control or a modification of benefits afforded by the electronic record; or
12 ~~including a transfer or loss of control or a modification of benefits afforded by the electronic~~
13 ~~record; or~~

14 (2) the person ~~has agreed to share~~ shares the power with another person.

15 Reporter's Note

16
17 1. *Why “control” matters.* Control serves two major functions in Article 12. An
18 electronic record is a “controllable electronic record” and is subject to the provisions of this
19 article only if it can be subjected to control under this section. *See* draft § 12-102(a)(1) (defining
20 “controllable electronic record”). And only a person having control of a controllable electronic
21 record is eligible to become a qualifying purchaser and so take free of claims of a property
22 interest in the controllable electronic record or any controllable account or controllable payment
23 intangible evidenced by the controllable electronic record and to receive protection from the “no-
24 action” rule. *See* draft § 12-104.

25
26 In addition, draft amendments to Article 9 provide that obtaining control of a controllable
27 electronic record is one method by which to perfect a security interest in the controllable
28 electronic record or any controllable account or controllable payment intangible evidenced by the
29 controllable electronic record. Under these amendments, perfection of a security interest in
30 controllable accounts and controllable payment intangibles can be achieved by obtaining control
31 of the related controllable electronic record. *See* draft §§ 9-107A; 9-314. Moreover, a security

1 interest perfected by control has priority over a conflicting security interest that was perfected by
2 a method other than control. *See* draft § 9-326A.

3
4 2. *Powers and sources of powers; inability to exercise a power.* This section conditions
5 control on a person's having the three powers specified in paragraph (a)(1). A person would have
6 a power described in this paragraph if the controllable electronic record, a record attached to or
7 logically associated with the controllable electronic record, or any system in which it is recorded
8 gives the purchaser that power. This description of the source of the relevant powers should be
9 construed broadly and functionally. For example, a system in which the person in control is
10 identified is a permissible source of a power even if it is related to but not precisely the "same"
11 system in which the controllable electronic record is recorded. Moreover, a person would have a
12 power even if the characteristics of the particular purchaser disable the person from exercising
13 the power. This would be the case, for example, when the purchaser holds the private key
14 required to access the benefit of the controllable electronic record but lacks the hardware
15 required to use it.

16
17 3. "*Benefit.*" Subparagraphs (a)(1)(A) and (a)(1)(B)(i) condition control of a controllable
18 electronic record on a person's relationship to the benefit of the controllable electronic record.

19
20 As used in the section, the "benefit" of a controllable electronic record refers to the rights
21 that are afforded by the controllable electronic record and the uses to which the controllable
22 electronic record can be put. These, in turn, depend on the characteristics of the controllable
23 electronic record in question. For example, the benefit afforded by control of a bitcoin is that it
24 can be held or disposed of (sold or spent). And control of a controllable electronic record
25 evidencing a controllable account or controllable payment intangible affords the benefit of the
26 right to collect from the account debtor (obligor).

27
28 The system in which a controllable electronic record is recorded may limit the benefit
29 from the controllable electronic record that is available to those who interact with the system. In
30 determining whether a person has the power to avail itself of substantially all the benefit from a
31 controllable electronic record under subparagraph (a)(1)(A), or to prevent others from availing
32 themselves of substantially all the benefit from a controllable electronic record under
33 subparagraph (a)(1)(B)(i), only the benefit that the system makes available should be considered.

34
35 4. *Power to retrieve information.* By definition, the information constituting an electronic
36 record must be "retrievable in perceivable form." UCC § 1-201(b)(31 (defining "record"). The
37 power to retrieve the record in perceivable form is included in the benefit of a controllable
38 electronic record. "Perceivable form" means that the contents of the record are intelligible; the
39 ability to perceive the indecipherable jumble of an encrypted record does not give a person the
40 power to retrieve the record in perceivable form.

41
42 To have control of a controllable electronic record under subparagraph (a)(1)(A), a
43 person must have at least the nonexclusive power to avail itself of this benefit. If a person also
44 has the exclusive power to decrypt the encrypted record, the person will have the exclusive
45 power to prevent others from availing themselves of substantially all the benefit from the
46 controllable electronic record and thereby satisfy the condition in subparagraph (a)(1)(B)(i).

1 5. *Exclusive powers.* Unlike the power in subparagraph (a)(1)(A), the powers in
2 subparagraphs (a)(1)(B)(i) and (a)(1)(B)(ii) must be held exclusively by the person claiming
3 control in order to establish control. However, subsection (c) contains two limitations on the term
4 “exclusive” as used in subsection (a)(1). Under subsection (c), a power can be “exclusive” even
5 if one or both of these limitations apply.

7 Paragraph (ee)(1) takes account of the fact that the powers of a purchaser of a
8 controllable electronic record necessarily are subject to the attributes of the controllable
9 electronic record and the protocols of any system in which the controllable electronic record is
10 recorded. . A transfer of control resulting from a program that is a part of a system’s protocol is
11 inherent in the controllable electronic record and does not impair the exclusivity of the power of
12 the person in control of the record.

14 Paragraph (ee)(2) allows for a ~~person’s agreement~~ person in control to share a power with
15 another person. without impairing the exclusivity of the power. Paragraph (e)(2) contemplates
16 that the sharing would be pursuant to the agreement or consent of the person in control. One
17 effect of paragraph (ee)(2) is that, under a multi-signature (multi-sig) agreement, any person that
18 is readily identifiable under paragraph (a)(2) and shares the relevant power would be eligible to
19 have control, even if the action of another person is a condition for the exercise of the power. For
20 example, a person in control may agree that another person’s action on the relevant system
21 would be required to effect a transfer of control without impairing the requisite exclusivity.

23 [THE OFFICIAL COMMENTS WILL INCLUDE ADDITIONAL, CONCRETE, REAL-
24 WORLD EXAMPLES OF (c)(1) CHANGES AND (c)(2) SHARING THAT DO NOT
25 IMPAIR THE EXCLUSIVITY OF A POWER. THESE WILL INCLUDE EXAMPLES
26 AND DISCUSSION OF (I) UPGRADES AND MODIFICATIONS OF SYSTEMS FOR
27 CONTROLLABLE ELECTRONIC RECORDS, (II) “MULTI-SIG” ARRANGEMENTS,
28 AND (III) “STAKING” (AND WHEN IT MIGHT OR MIGHT NOT RESULT IN LOSS
29 OF CONTROL).]

31 6. *Transfer of control.* The power to transfer control of a controllable electronic record
32 under subsection (a)(1)(B)(ii) includes the power to cause another person to obtain control of
33 another derivative controllable electronic record that results from the transfer of the controllable
34 electronic record. See draft § 12-104, Reporter’s Note 4.

36 ~~7. *Control through another person.* Neither Article 12 nor any other provision of the~~
37 ~~UCC (or other law that has been brought to the attention of the Drafting Committee) would~~
38 ~~restrict or render ineffective any agreement of a person in control of a controllable electronic~~
39 ~~record to hold control on behalf of another person. This result is implicit from paragraph (c)(2)~~
40 ~~dealing with sharing of control. It would also follow under principles of agency. But such an~~
41 ~~arrangement should be effective regardless of any agency or fiduciary relationship~~
42 ~~Readily~~
43 ~~identify. Paragraph (a)(2) provides that a person does not have control of a controllable electronic~~
44 ~~record unless the controllable electronic record, a record attached to or logically associated with~~
45 ~~the controllable electronic record, or any system in which the controllable electronic record is~~
46 ~~recorded enables the person readily to identify itself as the person having the requisite powers.~~
 This paragraph does not obligate a person to identify itself as having control. However, to prove

1 that it has control, a person would need to prove that the relevant records or any system in which
2 the controllable electronic record is recorded readily identifies the person as such. But proof that
3 a person has the powers specified in section (a)(1) does not require proof of exclusivity—i.e.,
4 proof of a negative (that no one else has such powers). The means of identification mentioned in
5 subsection (a)(2) derive from Section 3-110(c). Subsection (a)(2) adds “cryptographic key” as an
6 example of a way in which a person may be identified.

7
8 8. *Control through another person.* Neither Article 12 nor any other provision of the
9 UCC (or other law that has been brought to the attention of the Drafting Committee) would
10 restrict or render ineffective any agreement of a person in control of a controllable electronic
11 record to hold control on behalf of another person. This result is implicit from paragraph (c)(2)
12 dealing with sharing of control. It would also follow under principles of agency. But such an
13 arrangement should be effective regardless of any agency or fiduciary relationship.

14
15 This concept is expressly addressed in Section 8-106(d)(3), on control of a security
16 entitlement, which achieves perfection of a security interest under Sections 9-106(a) and 9-
17 314(a). It also applies to perfection by possession under Section 9-313(c) if a person other than
18 the debtor or the secured party is in possession of collateral. Under those provisions, however,
19 effectiveness is conditioned in some circumstances on an “acknowledgment” by the person in
20 control or possession. Under Section 9-313(c) the acknowledgment must be in an authenticated
21 record. These provisions appear to derive from practices involving bailees of tangible property,
22 such as goods, chattel paper, and certificated securities.

23
24 Subsection (b) likewise provides for control by a person through another person’s control
25 on behalf of the person. Subsection (b) is patterned on Section 9-313(c), but like Section 8-
26 103(d)(3), subsection (b) omits the requirement in Section 9-313(c) that an acknowledgment be
27 made in an authenticated record. Although best practices would suggest the wisdom of relying
28 on an authenticated record to evidence such an acknowledgment, subsection (b) would permit
29 proof by other means.

30
31 Substantially similar provisions are proposed to be included in draft §§ 7-106 (control of
32 electronic documents of title), 9-104 (control of deposit accounts), 9-105 (control of authoritative
33 electronic copies of records evidencing chattel paper), and 9-105A (control of electronic money)
34 and in a proposed conforming modification to Section 8-106(d)(3) (control of security
35 entitlement).

36
37 Subsection (b) qualifies this method of obtaining control by providing that the
38 acknowledging person must be one “other than the transferor of an interest in the electronic
39 record.” Section 9-313(c) expressly provides in this context that an acknowledging person
40 having possession of goods must be a person “other than the debtor.” The official comments to
41 Section 8-106 are to the same effect in the context of control of a security entitlement. Section
42 8-106(d)(3), comment 4. The same policy that underpins the inapplicability of this method of
43 control to an acknowledgment by a debtor applies as well to a transferor that is not an Article 9
44 debtor. Control is intended to be a proxy for and a functional equivalent of the transfer of
45 physical possession of goods. In general, a person can obtain control through control by an agent,
46 as noted above. However, an acknowledgment by a *debtor or transferor* that acts as an agent of

1 a secured party or other transferee would be ineffective. This corresponds to the policy
2 underlying Section 9-313 that “the debtor cannot qualify as an agent for the secured party for
3 purposes of the secured party’s taking possession.” Section 9-313, comment 3. ~~The Drafting~~
4 ~~Committee may wish to consider whether the statute should provide expressly that a debtor or~~
5 ~~transferor cannot act as an agent for a secured party or other transferee. The same issue arises~~
6 ~~not only under 9-313 but also in connection with the proposed modifications to Sections 7-106,~~
7 ~~8-106(d)(3), 9-105, and 9-105A.~~

8
9 The combined operation of subsections (b) and (c)(2) ensure that the continuance of
10 various existing practices would not prevent or cause the loss of control. For example, a person
11 in control may wish to grant another person the power to approve or disapprove a transfer of
12 control on the system. Alternatively, a person in control may wish to permit a system
13 administrator to transfer control to another person under specified conditions without
14 participation by the person in control. And, of course, a person in control may wish to delegate
15 the power to transfer control to an agent or fiduciary.

16
17 ~~8. *Readily identify*. Paragraph (a)(2) provides that a person does not have control of a~~
18 ~~controllable electronic record unless the controllable electronic record, a record attached to or~~
19 ~~logically associated with the controllable electronic record, or any system in which the~~
20 ~~controllable electronic record is recorded enables the person readily to identify itself as the~~
21 ~~person having the requisite powers. This paragraph does not obligate a person to identify itself as~~
22 ~~having control. However, to prove that it has control, a person would need to prove that the~~
23 ~~relevant records or any system in which the controllable electronic record is recorded readily~~
24 ~~identifies the person as such. But proof that a person has the powers specified in section (a)(1)~~
25 ~~does not require proof of exclusivity—i.e., proof of a negative (that no one else has such~~
26 ~~powers). The means of identification mentioned in subsection (a)(2) derive from Section 3-~~
27 ~~110(e). Subsection (a)(2) adds “cryptographic key” as an example of a way in which a person~~
28 ~~may be identified.~~

29
30 9. *No requirement to acknowledge, no duties, and no requirement to confirm*
31 *acknowledgment*. Subsections (c) and (d) derive from Section 9-313(f) and (g). Subsection (c)
32 makes clear that a person that has control under this section has no duty to acknowledge that it
33 has or will obtain control on behalf of another person. Arrangements for a person to
34 acknowledge that it has or will obtain control on behalf of another person are not standardized.
35 Accordingly, subsection (d) leaves to the agreement of the parties and to any other applicable
36 law any duties of a person that does acknowledge that it has or will obtain control on behalf of
37 another person and provides that a person making an acknowledgment is not required to confirm
38 the acknowledgment to another person.

39
40 **Section 12-106. Discharge of Account Debtor on Controllable Account or**
41 **Controllable Payment Intangible.**

42 (a) [Discharge of account debtor.] An account debtor on a controllable account or
43 controllable payment intangible may discharge its obligation by paying:

(1) the person having control of the controllable electronic record that evidences the controllable account or controllable payment intangible; or

(2) except as provided in subsection (b), a person that formerly had control of the controllable electronic record.

(b) **[Effect of notification.]** Subject to ~~subsections~~ subsection (d) ~~and (h)~~, an account debtor may not discharge its obligation by paying a person that formerly had control of the controllable electronic record if the account debtor receives a notification that:

(1) is authenticated by a person that formerly had control or the person to which control was transferred;

(2) reasonably identifies the controllable account or controllable payment intangible;

(3) notifies the account debtor that control of the controllable electronic record that evidences the controllable account or controllable payment intangible was transferred;

(4) identifies the transferee, in any reasonable way, including by name, identifying number, cryptographic key, office, or account number; and

(5) provides a commercially reasonable method by which the account debtor is to pay the transferee.

(c) **[Discharge following effective notification.]** After receipt of a notification that complies with subsection (b), the account debtor may discharge its obligation ~~only~~ by paying in accordance with the notification ~~and~~ may not discharge the obligation by paying a person that formerly had control~~;~~.

(d) **[When notification ineffective.]** Subject to subsection (h), notification is ineffective under subsection (b):

(1) unless, before the notification is sent, an account debtor and the person that, at that time, had control of the controllable electronic record that evidences the controllable account or controllable payment intangible agree in an authenticated record to a commercially reasonable method by which a person may furnish reasonable proof that control has been transferred;

(2) to the extent an agreement between an account debtor and seller of a payment intangible limits the account debtor's duty to pay a person other than the seller and the limitation is effective under law other than this article; or

(3) at the option of an account debtor, if the notification notifies the account debtor to:

(A) divide a payment;

(B) make less than the full amount of ~~a required~~ an installment or other periodic payment; or

(C) pay any part of a payment by more than one method or to more than one person.

(e) **[Proof of transfer of control.]** Subject to subsection (h), if requested by the account debtor, the person giving the notification seasonably shall furnish reasonable proof, using the agreed method, that control of the controllable electronic record has been transferred. ~~Unless the person complies~~ ~~If the person does not comply~~ with the request, the account debtor may discharge its obligation by paying a person that formerly had control, even if the account debtor has received a notification under subsection (b).

(f) **[What constitutes reasonable proof.]** A person furnishes reasonable proof that control has been transferred if the person demonstrates, using the agreed method, that the transferee has the power to:

1 (1) avail itself of substantially all the benefit from the controllable electronic
2 record;

3 (2) prevent others from availing themselves of substantially all the benefit from
4 the controllable electronic record; and

5 (3) transfer the powers mentioned in paragraphs (1) and (2) to another person.

6 (g) **[Rights not waivable.]** Subject to subsection (h), an account debtor may not waive or
7 vary its rights under subsections (d)(1) and (e) or its option under subsection (d)(3).

8 (h) **[Rule for individual under other law.]** This section is subject to law other than this
9 article which establishes a different rule for an account debtor who is an individual and who
10 incurred the obligation primarily for personal, family, or household purposes.

11 **Reporter's Note**

12 1. *Source of these provisions.* These provisions derive from Section 3-602, which governs
13 the discharge of a person obligated on a negotiable instrument, and Section 9-406, which governs
14 the discharge of an account debtor, including a person obligated on an account or payment
15 intangible.

16
17 2. *The basic rules.* This section applies only to an account debtor that has undertaken to
18 pay the person that has control of the controllable electronic record that evidences the obligation
19 to pay. *See* draft § 9-102 (defining “controllable account” and “controllable payment
20 intangible”). Section 9-406 would continue to apply in other respects and to all other account
21 debtors. As to the relationship between this section and Section 9-406, see Note 4.

22
23 Under subsection (a)(1), an account debtor may discharge its obligation on the
24 controllable account or controllable payment intangible by paying the person that has control of
25 the related controllable electronic record at the time of payment. Subsections (a)(2) and (b)
26 would remove from an account debtor the burden of determining who has control of the related
27 controllable electronic record at any given time—a burden that, with respect to some controllable
28 electronic records, an account debtor may be unable to satisfy. Under paragraph (a)(2), subject to
29 subsection (b), an account debtor may discharge its obligation by paying a person that formerly
30 had control of the related controllable electronic record, which presumably would include the
31 initial obligee.

32
33 Subsection (b) reflects the fact that a person to which control has been transferred may
34 not wish to take the risk that the account debtor will discharge its obligation by paying the
35 transferor. Subsection (b) would protect the transferee by providing that if the account debtor

1 receives an effective notification that control has been transferred, the account debtor may
2 discharge its obligation by paying in accordance with the notification and may not discharge its
3 obligation by paying a person that formerly had control. The notification must be authenticated
4 by a person formerly having control or by the transferee.
5

6 To be effective under subsection (b), a notification must reasonably identify the
7 controllable account or controllable payment intangible, notify the account debtor that control of
8 the controllable electronic record that evidences the controllable account or controllable payment
9 intangible was transferred, identify the transferee in any reasonable way, and provide a
10 commercially reasonable method by which the account debtor is to make payments to the
11 transferee. A change in the identity of the person to which the account debtor must make
12 payment should not, and typically will not, impose a significant burden on the account debtor.
13 However, one can imagine a method of making payment that would be burdensome, *e.g.*, making
14 a payment through a trading platform or payment service with which the account debtor does not
15 have an account. For this reason, the designated method of making payment must be
16 “commercially reasonable.”
17

18 3. “*Reasonable proof.*” As noted above, this section derives in large part from Section 9-
19 406, which provides for notification that an account or payment intangible has been assigned.
20 Account debtors that have received notification of an assignment under Section 9-406 almost
21 always make payments in accordance with the notice. Recognizing that an account debtor may
22 be uncertain whether a notification is legitimate, Section 9-406 affords to an account debtor the
23 right to request proof that the account or payment intangible was assigned.
24

25 Subsection (e) contains a similar provision. On the account debtor’s request, the person
26 giving the notification must seasonably furnish reasonable proof that control of the controllable
27 electronic record has been transferred. If the person does not comply with the request, the
28 account debtor may ignore the notification and discharge its obligation by a paying a person
29 formerly in control.
30

31 “Reasonable proof” requires evidence that would be understood by a typical account
32 debtor to whom it is proffered as demonstrating to a reasonably high probability that control of
33 the controllable electronic record has been transferred to the transferee. Subsection (f) provides a
34 safe harbor for providing reasonable proof. It enables a person to satisfy the account debtor’s
35 request by demonstrating that the transferee has the power to avail itself of substantially all the
36 benefit from the controllable electronic record, to prevent others from availing themselves of
37 substantially all the benefit from the controllable electronic record, and to transfer these powers
38 to another person. This demonstration would not necessarily prove that a person actually has
39 control of a controllable electronic record because it need not show that the transferee held the
40 last two powers exclusively. Nevertheless, such a demonstration would constitute “reasonable
41 proof” under subsection (f). A person that has control should have little difficulty providing this
42 proof, as a person cannot have control unless it can readily identify itself as having the requisite
43 powers. *See* draft § 12-105(a)(2).
44

45 Reasonable proof that is seasonably furnished by a person other than the person that gave
46 the notification would constitute compliance with the account debtor’s request.

1 Subsection (e) requires that reasonable proof be provided “using the agreed method.”
2 Subsection (f) requires that a person use “the agreed method” to demonstrate that the transferee
3 has the specified powers. “Agreed method” refers to the commercially reasonable method to
4 which the parties agreed, in an authenticated record, before the notification was sent. If parties
5 did not so agree, the notification is ineffective under subsection (d)(1).
6

7 An account debtor may agree to participate in a system providing for the control of
8 controllable accounts or controllable payment intangibles. If the system is programmed to
9 provide for notification to the account debtor upon the transfer of control, the account debtor’s
10 agreement and the operation of the system may satisfy the requirements of subsections (d)(1),
11 (e), and (f).
12

13 4. *Relationship to Section 9-406.* Section 9-406 governs the discharge of the obligation of
14 an account debtor. Section 9-406 is proposed to be amended to carve out transactions covered by
15 this section. *See* draft § 9-406.
16

17 **Section 12-107. Governing Law.**

18 (a) **[Governing law: general rule.]** Except as provided in subsection (b), the local law
19 of a controllable electronic record’s jurisdiction governs a matter covered by this article.

20 (b) **[Governing law: Section 12-106.]** The local law of the controllable electronic
21 record’s jurisdiction for a controllable electronic record that evidences a controllable account or
22 controllable payment intangible governs a matter covered by Section 12-106 unless an effective
23 agreement determines that the local law of another jurisdiction governs.

24 (c) **[Controllable electronic record’s jurisdiction.]** The following rules determine a
25 controllable electronic record’s jurisdiction under this section:

26 (1) If the controllable electronic record, or a record attached to or logically
27 associated with the controllable electronic record which is readily available for review, expressly
28 provides that a particular jurisdiction is the controllable electronic record’s jurisdiction for
29 purposes of this article or the [Uniform Commercial Code], that jurisdiction is the controllable
30 electronic record’s jurisdiction.

1 (2) If paragraph (1) does not apply and the rules of the system in which the
2 controllable electronic record is recorded are readily available for review and expressly provide
3 that a particular jurisdiction is the controllable electronic record's jurisdiction for purposes of
4 this article or the [Uniform Commercial Code], that jurisdiction is the controllable electronic
5 record's jurisdiction.

6 (3) If paragraphs (1) and (2) do not apply and the controllable electronic record,
7 or a record attached to or logically associated with the controllable electronic record which is
8 readily available for review, expressly provides that the controllable electronic record is
9 governed by the law of a particular jurisdiction, that jurisdiction is the controllable electronic
10 record's jurisdiction.

11 (4) If paragraphs (1) through (3) do not apply and the rules of the system in which
12 the controllable electronic record is recorded are readily available for review and expressly
13 provide that the controllable electronic record or the system is governed by the law of a
14 particular jurisdiction, that jurisdiction is the controllable electronic record's jurisdiction.

15 (5) If paragraphs (1) through (4) do not apply, the controllable electronic record's
16 jurisdiction is the ~~jurisdiction in which the transferor is located~~ District of Columbia.

17 ~~(d) [Location of transferor if evidence not sufficient.] If subsection (c)(5) applies, the~~
18 ~~governing law is in issue in an action, and the evidence is not sufficient to establish the location~~
19 ~~of the transferor, the transferor is located in the District of Columbia.~~

20 ~~(e) [Applicability of Article 12.] If subsection (d)~~ (d) [Applicability of Article 12.] If
21 subsection (c)(5) applies and Article 12 is not in effect in the District of Columbia without
22 material modification, the governing law for a matter covered by this article is the law of the
23 District of Columbia as though Article 12 were in effect in the District of Columbia without

material modification. In this section, “Article 12” means Uniform Commercial Code—
Controllable Electronic Records (with Conforming [and Miscellaneous] Amendments to Articles
1[, 2, 2A, 3, 4, 4A, 5, 7, 8,] and 9), 2022 Official Text.

~~(f)~~ **[Relation of transaction to controllable electronic record’s jurisdiction not
necessary.]** Subsections (b) through (d) apply even if a transaction does not bear any relation to
the controllable electronic record’s jurisdiction.

~~(g) [Location of transferor.] Except as provided in subsection (d), Section 9-307, other
than Section 9-307(c), determines the location of the transferor for purposes of subsection (c)(5)
as if the transferor were a debtor.~~

~~(h)~~ **(f) [Rights of purchasers determined at time of purchase.]** The rights acquired by a
purchaser or a qualifying purchaser under Section 12-104 are governed by the law applicable
under this section at the time of purchase.

Legislative Note: *The state should describe where and how Article 12 is available to the public.
See, e.g., TRADES Regulations, 31 CFR 357.2, defining “Revised Article 8.” The definition of
“Article 12” should cite the official “title” of the Official Text of the article.*

* * *

Reporter’s Note

1. *Source of these provisions.* The provisions of draft § 12-107 (as well as draft § 9-306A) derive from Sections 8-110 and 9-305 on law governing perfection and priority of security interests in investment property and the relevance of a securities intermediary’s jurisdiction and a commodity intermediary’s jurisdiction.

2. *Practical limitations on determination of governing law.* This section relating to the law governing the matters covered by Article 12 must confront substantial practical limitations. These limitations arise primarily from two factors. First, as described below, this section relies primarily on a “waterfall” of alternatives for determining a controllable electronic record’s jurisdiction. The waterfall depends on express provisions of a controllable electronic record or the system in which it is recorded. Many electronic records and systems that currently exist do not contain these provisions. As explained in ~~the~~ Note 5, the expectation is that over time electronic records and related systems will adopt these provisions in reliance on this section so as to create certainty as to the governing law. Second, in the absence of these provisions, at the

1 bottom of the waterfall the controllable electronic record's jurisdiction is the ~~jurisdiction in~~
2 ~~which a transferor is located. This also is problematic because in some cases that location cannot~~
3 ~~readily be determined by parties to a transaction or be determined by a tribunal, primarily~~
4 ~~because the identity of the transferor may be unknown. See Reporter's Prefatory Note 1 to~~
5 ~~Article 12 District of Columbia. See Note 5, below.~~

6
7 3. *Governing law for draft § 12-106.* Subsection (b) provides an exception to the general
8 rule of subsection (a) that "the local law of a controllable electronic record's jurisdiction governs
9 the matters covered by this article." The exception recognizes that an account debtor's rights and
10 duties generally are governed by the law applicable to the underlying contract between the
11 account debtor and an assignor, and not by the law applicable to the agreement between the
12 assignor (debtor) and the assignee (secured party)—i.e., a security agreement. See Section 9-401,
13 Comment 3. Subsection (b) recognizes that an effective agreement between the account debtor
14 and assignor may choose a different law to cover the matters covered by draft § 12-106 (i.e., the
15 account debtor's rights and duties addressed in that section).

16
17 4. *The basic rule: Law of controllable electronic record's jurisdiction.* Subsection (a)
18 states the basic rule that the law of a controllable electronic record's jurisdiction governs the
19 matters covered by Article 12. This might be viewed as a rough proxy for the traditional role of
20 the location of tangible asset (e.g., goods) in determining the applicable law (*lex rei sitae*).
21 Drawing on the analogous provisions in Sections 8-110 and 9-305 in the context of a security
22 entitlement or securities account or a commodity contract or commodity account, under this draft
23 it is the controllable electronic record itself, records attached thereto or associated therewith, or
24 the system in which the controllable electronic record is recorded that determines the governing
25 law. Subsection (c) provides a "waterfall" of rules based on provisions that identify a particular
26 jurisdiction as the controllable electronic record's jurisdiction or alternatively that provide the
27 governing law of a controllable electronic record or the system in which the record is recorded.

28
29 5. ~~*Bottom of the waterfall: Location of the transferor. Subsections (c)(5) and (d) address*~~
30 ~~*a problem that does not normally exist in the context of Sections 9-110 and 9-305. As explained*~~
31 ~~*in Note 2, currently*~~*Bottom of the waterfall: District of Columbia.* Currently, many controllable
32 electronic records, associated records, and systems in which such records are recorded do not
33 identify the "controllable electronic record's jurisdiction" or the governing law (some
34 permissioned systems being exceptions). (One hopes that once Article 12 and accompanying
35 amendments are widely adopted, systems will adapt and the waterfall will become more
36 generally viable for identifying a controllable electronic record's jurisdiction.) Consequently,
37 ~~subsection (c)(5) addresses a problem that does not normally exist in the context of Sections 8-~~
38 ~~110 and 9-305. The likely choice for the bottom of the waterfall ultimately turns to ordinarily~~
39 ~~might be~~ the location of the "transferor" of a controllable electronic record. This debtor. That
40 approach ~~derives from~~would follow the role of the location of a debtor under Sections 9-301 and
41 9-307. ~~Also as explained in Note 2, However, that location may not readily be determined by~~
42 ~~parties to a transaction, primarily because~~ in many cases involving controllable electronic
43 records the transferor is not known to or easily discoverable by a purchaser. *See Reporter's*
44 *Prefatory Note 1 to Article 12.* Consequently, Subsection (d)(5) resolves this dilemma by
45 providing that the ~~transferor's location (and, therefore, the~~ controllable electronic record's

jurisdiction) is the District of Columbia ~~if in an action there is not sufficient evidence to establish a transferor's actual location. Cf. Section 9-307(e)(DC).~~

6. *District of Columbia as ~~default location of transferor-controllable electronic record's jurisdiction.~~* The designation of ~~the District of Columbia (DC)~~ as the ~~location of the transferor pursuant to subsection (d)~~controllable electronic record's jurisdiction assumes that DC will have adopted Article 12 and the conforming amendments to Articles 1 and 9 in substantially the uniform version. This is a plausible assumption based on the history of adoptions in that jurisdiction. Subsection (~~ed~~) addresses the unlikely situation that DC might not so adopt Article 12 or might later adopt materially non-uniform amendments. Subsection (~~ed~~) is patterned loosely (but as closely as feasible) on the TRADES Regulations, 31 CFR § 357.11(d), for U.S. Treasury securities.

The term "Article 12" is defined in draft subsection (~~id~~) as the officially promulgated version of Article 12 and conforming amendments. The official comments will explain that in determining whether DC has enacted Article 12 without material modification a tribunal should consider the materiality of any provision in the context of the issue or issues before it. A modification of a provision that would be material in another context should be disregarded if it would have no bearing on the issue or issues before the tribunal.

7. *~~Determinative role of actual location of transferor. When a tribunal is called upon to determine the governing law concerning a matter covered by Article 12, subsection (d) instructs that the location of the transferor, and consequently the controllable electronic record's jurisdiction, is the District of Columbia when there is insufficient evidence for the tribunal to determine the actual location of the transferor. Subsection (d) has no application, however, when a tribunal can make a finding as to the actual location. This is so, moreover, even if at the time of a transaction, such as a purchaser's acquisition of a controllable electronic record, the purchaser had no practical ability to determine that location (likely because the purchaser could not discover the transferor's identity). Such a purchaser's reasonable reliance on the governing law being that of the District of Columbia necessarily is limited to a future case in which no party can adduce sufficient evidence for a tribunal's determination of the actual location. If in any such future case a party does adduce such evidence and a tribunal determines that the actual location of the transferor is other than the District of Columbia, subsection (d) does not apply.~~*

8. *Relevant time for determination of governing law.* Draft subsection (~~hf~~) provides that the rights of purchasers are governed by the applicable law as of the time of purchase. Note that Sections 8-110 and 9-305 do not contain an analogous rule with respect to a securities intermediary's jurisdiction. However, Section 8-110(c) does provide a similar rule for the delivery of a security certificate and adverse claims. As to the timing of the determination of the governing law for other issues under Article 12, such as the rights and duties of account debtors under draft § 12-106, the section does not specify a time. As with most statutory provisions relating to governing law, courts are free to determine the appropriate relevant time taking into account the relevant facts and the nature of the issues involved.

1
2
3
4

ANNEX A

TRANSITION PROVISIONS FOR 2022 AMENDMENTS
TO UNIFORM COMMERCIAL CODE—EMERGING TECHNOLOGIES